Cluster switches

Cluster and storage switches

NetApp
May 08, 2024

Table of Contents

Cluster switches

Broadcom-supported BES-53248

Overview

Overview of installation and configuration for BES-53248 switches

The BES-53248 is a bare metal switch designed to work in ONTAP clusters ranging from two to 24 nodes.

Initial configuration overview

To initially configure a BES-53248 cluster switch on systems running ONTAP, follow these steps:

1. Install the hardware for the BES-53248 cluster switch.

   Instructions are available in the *Broadcom-supported BES-53248 Cluster Switch Installation Guide*.

2. Configure the BES-53248 cluster switch.

   Perform an initial setup of the BES-53248 cluster switch.

3. Install the EFOS software.

   Download and install the Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) software on the BES-53248 cluster switch.

4. Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches.

   Optionally, add new ports by purchasing and installing more licenses. The switch base model is licensed for 16 10GbE or 25GbE ports and two 100GbE ports.

5. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF).

   Install or upgrade the RCF on the BES-53248 cluster switch, and then verify the ports for an additional license after the RCF is applied.

6. Install the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) configuration file.

   Install the applicable configuration file for cluster switch health monitoring.

7. Enable SSH on BES-53248 cluster switches.

   If you use the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, enable SSH on the switches.

8. Enable the log collection feature.

   Use log collection features to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.

Additional information

Before you begin installation or maintenance, be sure to review the following:

- Configuration requirements
- Components and part numbers
- Required documentation

Configuration requirements for BES-53248 cluster switches

For BES-53248 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review EFOS and ONTAP support and configuration requirements.

EFOS and ONTAP support

See the NetApp Hardware Universe and Broadcom switches compatibility matrix for EFOS and ONTAP compatibility information with BES-53248 switches. EFOS and ONTAP support can vary by the specific machine type of the BES-53248 switch. For details of all BES-52348 switch machine types, see Components and part numbers for BES-53248 cluster switches.

Configuration requirements

To configure a cluster, you need the appropriate number and type of cables and cable connectors for the cluster switches. Depending on the type of cluster switch you are initially configuring, you need to connect to the switch console port with the included console cable.

Cluster switch port assignments

You can use the Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switch port assignments table as a guide to configuring your cluster.

Switch ports	Ports usage
01-16	10/25GbE cluster port nodes, base configuration
17-48	10/25GbE cluster port nodes, with licenses
49-54	40/100GbE cluster port nodes, with licenses, added right to left
55-56	100GbE cluster Inter-Switch Link (ISL) ports, base configuration

See the Hardware Universe for more information on switch ports.

Port group speed constraint

- On BES-53248 cluster switches, the 48 10/25GbE (SFP28/SFP+) ports are combined into 12 x 4-port groups as follows: Ports 1-4, 5-8, 9-12, 13-16, 17-20, 21-24, 25-28, 29-32, 33-36, 37-40, 41-44, and 45-48.
- The SFP28/SFP+ port speed must be the same (10GbE or 25GbE) across all ports in the 4-port group.

Additional requirements

- If you purchase additional licenses, see Activate newly licenses ports for details on how to activate them.
- If SSH is active, you must re-enable it manually after running the command `erase startup-config` and rebooting the switch.

Components and part numbers for BES-53248 cluster switches

For BES-53248 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review the list of components and part numbers.

The following table lists the part number, description, and minimum EFOS and ONTAP versions for the BES-53248 cluster switch components, including rack-mount rail kit details.

A minimum EFOS version of **3.10.0.3** is required for part numbers **X190005-B** and **X190005R-B**.

Part number	Description	Minimum EFOS version	Minimum ONTAP version
X190005-B	BES-53248-B/IX8, CLSW, 16PT10/25GB, PTSX (PTSX = Port Side Exhaust)	3.10.0.3	9.8
X190005R-B	BES-53248-B/IX8, CLSW, 16PT10/25GB, PSIN (PSIN = Port Side Intake)	3.10.0.3	9.8
X190005	BES-53248, CLSW, 16Pt10/25GB, PTSX, BRDCM SUPP	3.4.4.6	9.5P8
X190005R	BES-53248, CLSW, 16Pt10/25GB, PSIN, BRDCM SUPP	3.4.4.6	9.5P8
X-RAIL-4POST-190005	Rack mount rail kit Ozeki 4 post 19"	N/A	N/A

Note the following information with regards to machine types:

Machine type	EFOS version
BES-53248A1	3.4.4.6
BES-53248A2	3.10.0.3
BES-53248A3	3.10.0.3

You can determine your specific machine type by using the command: `show version`

Show example

```
(cs1)# show version

Switch: cs1

System Description............................. EFOS, 3.10.0.3, Linux
5.4.2-b4581018, 2016.05.00.07
Machine Type................................... BES-53248A3
Machine Model.................................. BES-53248
Serial Number.................................. QTWCU225xxxxx
Part Number.................................... 1IX8BZxxxxx
Maintenance Level.............................. a3a
Manufacturer................................... QTMC
Burned In MAC Address.......................... C0:18:50:F4:3x:xx
Software Version............................... 3.10.0.3
Operating System............................... Linux 5.4.2-b4581018
Network Processing Device...................... BCM56873_A0
.
.
.
```

Documentation requirements for BES-53248 cluster switches

For BES-53248 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review the specific switch and controller documentation.

Broadcom documentation

To set up the BES-53248 cluster switch, you need the following documents available from the Broadcom Support Site: Broadcom Ethernet Switch Product Line

Document title	Description
EFOS Administrator's Guide v3.4.3	Provides examples of how to use the BES-53248 switch in a typical network.
EFOS CLI Command Reference v3.4.3	Describes the command-line interface (CLI) commands you use to view and configure the BES-53248 software.
EFOS Getting Started Guide v3.4.3	Provides detailed information about for the BES-53248 switch.
EFOS SNMP Reference Guide v3.4.3	Provides examples of how to use the BES-53248 switch in a typical network.

Document title	Description
EFOS Scaling Parameters and Values v3.4.3	Describes the default scaling parameters with which EFOS software is delivered and validated on the supported platforms.
EFOS Functional Specifications v3.4.3	Describes the specifications for the EFOS software on the supported platforms.
EFOS Release Notes v3.4.3	Provides release-specific information about BES-53248 software.
Cluster Network and Management Network Compatibility Matrix	Provides information on network compatibility. The matrix is available from the BES-53248 switch download site at Broadcom cluster switches.

ONTAP systems documentation and KB articles

To set up an ONTAP system, you need the following documents from the NetApp Support Site at mysupport.netapp.com or the Knowledgebase (KB) site at kb.netapp.com.

Name	Description
NetApp Hardware Universe	Describes the power and site requirements for all NetApp hardware, including system cabinets, and provides information on the relevant connectors and cable options to use along with their part numbers.
Controller-specific *Installation and Setup Instructions*	Describes how to install NetApp hardware.
ONTAP 9	Provides detailed information about all aspects of the ONTAP 9 release.
How to add additional port licensing for the Broadcom-supported BES-53248 switch	Provides detailed information on adding port licenses. Go to the KB article.

Install hardware

Install the hardware for the BES-53248 cluster switch

To install the BES-53248 hardware, refer to Broadcom’s documentation.

Steps

1. Review the configuration requirements.
2. Follow the instructions in the Broadcom-supported BES-53248 Cluster Switch Installation Guide.

What’s next?

Configure the switch.

Configure the BES-53248 cluster switch

Follow these steps to perform an initial setup of the BES-53248 cluster switch.

Before you begin

- Hardware is installed, as described in Install the hardware.
- You have reviewed the following:
  - Configuration requirements
  - Components and part numbers
  - Documentation requirements

About the examples

The examples in the configuration procedures use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The NetApp switch names are `cs1` and `cs2`. The upgrade starts on the second switch, *cs2.*
- The cluster LIF names are `node1_clus1` and `node1_clus2` for node1, and `node2_clus1` and `node2_clus2` for node2.
- The IPspace name is Cluster.
- The `cluster1::>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports on each node are named `e0a` and `e0b`. See the NetApp Hardware Universe for the actual cluster ports supported on your platform.
- The Inter-Switch Links (ISLs) supported for the NetApp switches are ports 0/55 and 0/56.
- The node connections supported for the NetApp switches are ports 0/1 through 0/16 with default licensing.
- The examples use two nodes, but you can have up to 24 nodes in a cluster.

Steps

1. Connect the serial port to a host or serial port.
2. Connect the management port (the RJ-45 wrench port on the left side of the switch) to the same network where your TFTP server is located.
3. At the console, set the host-side serial settings:
   - 115200 baud
   - 8 data bits
   - 1 stop bit
   - parity: none
   - flow control: none
4. Log in to the switch as `admin` and press **Enter** when prompted for a password. The default switch name is **routing**. At the prompt, enter `enable`. This gives you access to Privileged EXEC mode for switch configuration.

Show example

```
User: admin
Password:
(Routing)> enable
Password:
(Routing)#
```

5. Change the switch name to **cs2**.

Show example

```
(Routing)# hostname cs2
(cs2)#
```

6. To set a static IP address, use the `serviceport protocol`, `network protocol`, and `serviceport ip` commands as shown in the example.

   The serviceport is set to use DHCP by default. The IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway address are assigned automatically.

Show example

```
(cs2)# serviceport protocol none
(cs2)# network protocol none
(cs2)# serviceport ip ipaddr netmask gateway
```

7. Verify the results using the command:

   `show serviceport`

Show example

```
(cs2)# show serviceport
Interface Status............................... Up
IP Address..................................... 172.19.2.2
Subnet Mask.................................... 255.255.255.0
Default Gateway................................ 172.19.2.254
IPv6 Administrative Mode....................... Enabled
IPv6 Prefix is ................................
fe80::dac4:97ff:fe71:123c/64
IPv6 Default Router............................
fe80::20b:45ff:fea9:5dc0
Configured IPv4 Protocol....................... DHCP
Configured IPv6 Protocol....................... None
IPv6 AutoConfig Mode........................... Disabled
Burned In MAC Address.......................... D8:C4:97:71:12:3C
```

8. Configure the domain and name server:

   `configure`

   Show example

```
(cs2)# configure
(cs2) (Config)# ip domain name company.com
(cs2) (Config)# ip name server 10.10.99.1 10.10.99.2
(cs2) (Config)# exit
(cs2) (Config)#
```

9. Configure the NTP server.

   a. Configure the time zone and time synchronization (SNTP):

      `sntp`

Show example

```
(cs2)#
(cs2) (Config)# sntp client mode unicast
(cs2) (Config)# sntp server 10.99.99.5
(cs2) (Config)# clock timezone -7
(cs2) (Config)# exit
(cs2) (Config)#
```

For EFOS version 3.10.0.3 and later, use the command `ntp`.

`ntp`

Show example

```
(cs2)configure
(cs2)(Config)# ntp ?

authenticate               Enables NTP authentication.
authentication-key         Configure NTP authentication key.
broadcast                  Enables NTP broadcast mode.
broadcastdelay             Configure NTP broadcast delay in
microseconds.
server                     Configure NTP server.
source-interface           Configure the NTP source-interface.
trusted-key                Configure NTP authentication key number
for trusted time source.
vrf                        Configure the NTP VRF.

(cs2)(Config)# ntp server ?

ip-address|ipv6-address|hostname  Enter a valid IPv4/IPv6 address
or hostname.

(cs2)(Config)# ntp server 10.99.99.5
```

b. Configure the time manually:

`clock`

Show example

```
(cs2)# config
(cs2) (Config)# no sntp client mode
(cs2) (Config)# clock summer-time recurring 1 sun mar 02:00 1 sun
nov 02:00 offset 60 zone EST
(cs2) (Config)# clock timezone -5 zone EST
(cs2) (Config)# clock set 07:00:00
(cs2) (Config)# *clock set 10/20/2020

(cs2) (Config)# show clock

07:00:11 EST(UTC-5:00) Oct 20 2020
No time source

(cs2) (Config)# exit

(cs2)# write memory

This operation may take a few minutes.
Management interfaces will not be available during this time.

Are you sure you want to save? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.

Configuration Saved!
```

What's next?

Install the EFOS software.

Configure software

Software install workflow for BES-53248 switches

To initially install and configure the software for a BES-53248 cluster switch, follow these steps:

1. Install the EFOS software.

   Download and install the Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) software on the BES-53248 cluster switch.

2. Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches.

   Optionally, add new ports by purchasing and installing more licenses. The switch base model is licensed for 16 10GbE or 25GbE ports and two 100GbE ports.

3. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF).

   Install or upgrade the RCF on the BES-53248 cluster switch, and then verify the ports for an additional license after the RCF is applied.

4. Install the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) configuration file.

   Install the applicable configuration file for cluster switch health monitoring.

5. Enable SSH on BES-53248 cluster switches.

   If you use the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, enable SSH on the switches.

6. Enable the log collection feature.

   Use this feature to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.

Install the EFOS software

Follow these steps to install the Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) software on the BES-53248 cluster switch.

EFOS software includes a set of advanced networking features and protocols for developing Ethernet and IP infrastructure systems. This software architecture is suitable for any network organizational device using applications that require thorough packet inspection or separation.

Prepare for installation

Before you begin

- Download the applicable Broadcom EFOS software for your cluster switches from the Broadcom Ethernet Switch Support site.
- Review the following notes regarding EFOS versions.

Note the following:

- When upgrading from EFOS 3.4.x.x to EFOS 3.7.x.x or later, the switch must be running EFOS 3.4.4.6 (or later 3.4.x.x release). If you are running a release prior to that, then upgrade the switch to EFOS 3.4.4.6 (or later 3.4.x.x release) first, then upgrade the switch to EFOS 3.7.x.x or later.
- The configuration for EFOS 3.4.x.x and 3.7.x.x or later are different. Changing the EFOS version from 3.4.x.x to 3.7.x.x or later, or vice versa, requires the switch to be reset to factory defaults and the RCF files for the corresponding EFOS version to be (re)applied. This procedure requires access through the serial console port.
- Beginning with EFOS version 3.7.x.x or later, a non-FIPS compliant and a FIPS compliant version is available. Different steps apply when moving from a non-FIPS compliant to a FIPS compliant version or vice versa. Changing EFOS from a non-FIPS compliant to a FIPS compliant version or vice versa will reset the switch to factory defaults. This procedure requires access through the serial console port.

Procedure	Current EFOS version	New EFOS version	High level steps

Steps to upgrade EFOS between two (non) FIPS compliant versions	3.4.x.x	3.4.x.x	Install the new EFOS image using Method 1: Install EFOS. The configuration and license information is retained.
	3.4.4.6 (or later 3.4.x.x)	3.7.x.x or later non-FIPS compliant	Upgrade EFOS using Method 1: Install EFOS. Reset the switch to factory defaults and apply the RCF file for EFOS 3.7.x.x or later.
	3.7.x.x or later non-FIPS compliant	3.4.4.6 (or later 3.4.x.x)	Downgrade EFOS using Method 1: Install EFOS. Reset the switch to factory defaults and apply the RCF file for EFOS 3.4.x.x
		3.7.x.x or later non-FIPS compliant	Install the new EFOS image using Method 1: Install EFOS. The configuration and license information is retained.
	3.7.x.x or later FIPS compliant	3.7.x.x or later FIPS compliant	Install the new EFOS image using Method 1: Install EFOS. The configuration and license information is retained.
Steps to upgrade to/from a FIPS compliant EFOS version	Non-FIPS compliant	FIPS compliant	Installation of the EFOS image using Method 2: Upgrade EFOS using the ONIE OS installation. The switch configuration and license information will be lost.
	FIPS compliant	Non-FIPS compliant	

To check if your version of EFOS is FIPS compliant or non-FIPS compliant, use the `show fips status` command. In the following examples, **IP_switch_a1** is using FIPS compliant EFOS and **IP_switch_a2** is using non-FIPS compliant EFOS.

- On switch IP_switch_a1:

```
IP_switch_a1 # *show fips status*

System running in FIPS mode
```

- On switch IP_switch_a2:

```
IP_switch_a2 # *show fips status*
                     ^
% Invalid input detected at `^` marker.
```

Install the software

Use one of the following methods:

- Method 1: Install EFOS. Use for most cases (see the table above).
- Method 2: Upgrade EFOS using the ONIE OS installation. Use if one EFOS version is FIPS compliant and the other EFOS version is non-FIPS compliant.

Method 1: Install EFOS

Perform the following steps to install or upgrade the EFOS software.

Note that after upgrading BES-53248 cluster switches from EFOS 3.3.x.x or 3.4.x.x to EFOS 3.7.0.4 or 3.8.0.2, Inter-Switch Links (ISLs) and port channel are marked in the **Down** state. See this KB article: BES-53248 Cluster Switch NDU failed upgrade to EFOS 3.7.0.4 and later for further details.

Steps

1. Connect the BES-53248 cluster switch to the management network.
2. Use the `ping` command to verify connectivity to the server hosting EFOS, licenses, and the RCF file.

Show example

This example verifies that the switch is connected to the server at IP address 172.19.2.1:

```
(cs2)# ping 172.19.2.1
Pinging 172.19.2.1 with 0 bytes of data:

Reply From 172.19.2.1: icmp_seq = 0. time= 5910 usec.
```

3. Back up the current active image on cs2:

```
show bootvar
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show bootvar

 Image Descriptions

 active :
 backup :

 Images currently available on Flash
--------------------------------------------------------------------
 unit      active      backup        current-active    next-active
--------------------------------------------------------------------
    1      3.4.3.3     Q.10.22.1     3.4.3.3           3.4.3.3

(cs2)# copy active backup
Copying active to backup
Management access will be blocked for the duration of the operation
Copy operation successful

(cs2)# show bootvar

Image Descriptions

 active :
 backup :
 Images currently available on Flash
--------------------------------------------------------------------
 unit      active      backup      current-active    next-active
--------------------------------------------------------------------
    1      3.4.3.3     3.4.3.3     3.4.3.3           3.4.3.3
(cs2)#
```

4. Verify the running version of the EFOS software:

```
show version
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show version

Switch: 1

System Description............................. BES-53248A1,
3.4.3.3, Linux 4.4.117-ceeeb99d, 2016.05.00.05
Machine Type................................... BES-53248A1
Machine Model.................................. BES-53248
Serial Number.................................. QTFCU38260014
Maintenance Level.............................. A
Manufacturer................................... 0xbc00
Burned In MAC Address.......................... D8:C4:97:71:12:3D
Software Version............................... 3.4.3.3
Operating System............................... Linux 4.4.117-
ceeeb99d
Network Processing Device...................... BCM56873_A0
CPLD Version................................... 0xff040c03

Additional Packages............................ BGP-4
............................................... QOS
............................................... Multicast
............................................... IPv6
............................................... Routing
............................................... Data Center
............................................... OpEN API
............................................... Prototype Open API
```

5. Download the image file to the switch.

   Copying the image file to the active image means that when you reboot, that image establishes the running EFOS version. The previous image remains available as a backup.

Show example

```
(cs2)# copy sftp://root@172.19.2.1//tmp/EFOS-3.4.4.6.stk active
Remote Password:**

Mode........................................... SFTP
Set Server IP.................................. 172.19.2.1
Path........................................... //tmp/
Filename....................................... EFOS-3.4.4.6.stk
Data Type...................................... Code
Destination Filename........................... active

Management access will be blocked for the duration of the transfer
Are you sure you want to start? (y/n) y
SFTP Code transfer starting...


File transfer operation completed successfully.
```

6. Display the boot images for the active and backup configuration:

   `show bootvar`

Show example

```
(cs2)# show bootvar

Image Descriptions

 active :
 backup :

 Images currently available on Flash
--------------------------------------------------------------------
 unit      active      backup       current-active        next-active
--------------------------------------------------------------------
    1     3.4.3.3     3.4.3.3       3.4.3.3              3.4.4.6
```

7. Reboot the switch:

   `reload`

Show example

```
(cs2)# reload

The system has unsaved changes.
Would you like to save them now? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully .
Configuration Saved!
System will now restart!
```

8. Log in again and verify the new version of the EFOS software:

`show version`

Show example

```
(cs2)# show version

Switch: 1

System Description............................. BES-53248A1,
3.4.4.6, Linux 4.4.211-28a6fe76, 2016.05.00.04
Machine Type................................... BES-53248A1,
Machine Model.................................. BES-53248
Serial Number.................................. QTFCU38260023
Maintenance Level.............................. A
Manufacturer................................... 0xbc00
Burned In MAC Address.......................... D8:C4:97:71:0F:40
Software Version............................... 3.4.4.6
Operating System............................... Linux 4.4.211-
28a6fe76
Network Processing Device...................... BCM56873_A0
CPLD Version................................... 0xff040c03

Additional Packages............................ BGP-4
............................................... QOS
............................................... Multicast
............................................... IPv6
............................................... Routing
............................................... Data Center
............................................... OpEN API
............................................... Prototype Open API
```

What's next?

Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches.

Method 2: Upgrade EFOS using the ONIE OS installation

You can perform the following steps if one EFOS version is FIPS compliant and the other EFOS version is non-FIPS compliant. These steps can be used to install the non-FIPS or FIPS compliant EFOS 3.7.x.x image from ONIE if the switch fails to boot.

> This functionality is only available for EFOS 3.7.x.x or later non-FIPS compliant.

Steps

1. Boot the switch into ONIE installation mode.

   During boot, select ONIE when you see the prompt.

   Show example

   ```
   +--------------------------------------------------------------------
   -+
   |EFOS
   |
   |*ONIE
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   |
   +--------------------------------------------------------------------
   -+
   ```

After you select **ONIE**, the switch loads and presents you with several choices. Select **Install OS**.

Show example

```
+--------------------------------------------------------------------
-+
|*ONIE: Install OS
|
| ONIE: Rescue
|
| ONIE: Uninstall OS
|
| ONIE: Update ONIE
|
| ONIE: Embed ONIE
|
| DIAG: Diagnostic Mode
|
| DIAG: Burn-In Mode
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
+--------------------------------------------------------------------
-+
```

The switch boots into ONIE installation mode.

2. Stop the ONIE discovery and configure the Ethernet interface.

   When the following message appears, press **Enter** to invoke the ONIE console:

```
Please press Enter to activate this console. Info: eth0:  Checking
link... up.
 ONIE:/ #
```

> The ONIE discovery continues and messages are printed to the console.

```
Stop the ONIE discovery
ONIE:/ # onie-discovery-stop
discover: installer mode detected.
Stopping: discover... done.
ONIE:/ #
```

3. Configure the Ethernet interface and add the route using `ifconfig eth0 <ipAddress> netmask <netmask> up` and `route add default gw <gatewayAddress>`

```
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0 10.10.10.10 netmask 255.255.255.0 up
ONIE:/ # route add default gw 10.10.10.1
```

4. Verify that the server hosting the ONIE installation file is reachable:

`ping`

Show example

```
ONIE:/ # ping 50.50.50.50
PING 50.50.50.50 (50.50.50.50): 56 data bytes
64 bytes from 50.50.50.50: seq=0 ttl=255 time=0.429 ms
64 bytes from 50.50.50.50: seq=1 ttl=255 time=0.595 ms
64 bytes from 50.50.50.50: seq=2 ttl=255 time=0.369 ms
^C
--- 50.50.50.50 ping statistics ---
3 packets transmitted, 3 packets received, 0% packet loss
round-trip min/avg/max = 0.369/0.464/0.595 ms
ONIE:/ #
```

5. Install the new switch software:

`ONIE:/ # onie-nos-install http://50.50.50.50/Software/onie-installer-x86_64`

Show example

```
ONIE:/ # onie-nos-install http://50.50.50.50/Software/onie-
installer-x86_64
discover: installer mode detected.
Stopping: discover... done.
Info: Fetching http://50.50.50.50/Software/onie-installer-3.7.0.4
...
Connecting to 50.50.50.50 (50.50.50.50:80)
installer            100% |*******************************| 48841k
0:00:00 ETA
ONIE: Executing installer: http://50.50.50.50/Software/onie-
installer-3.7.0.4
Verifying image checksum ... OK.
Preparing image archive ... OK.
```

The software installs and then reboots the switch. Let the switch reboot normally into the new EFOS version.

6. Verify that the new switch software is installed:

`show bootvar`

Show example

```
(cs2)# show bootvar
Image Descriptions
active :
backup :
Images currently available on Flash
----    ----------- -------- --------------- ------------
unit    active      backup   current-active  next-active
----    ----------- -------- --------------- ------------
1       3.7.0.4     3.7.0.4  3.7.0.4         3.7.0.4
(cs2) #
```

7. Complete the installation.

The switch will reboot with no configuration applied and reset to factory defaults.

What's next?

Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches.

Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches

The BES-53248 cluster switch base model is licensed for 16 10GbE or 25GbE ports and two 100GbE ports. You can add new ports by purchasing more licenses.

Review available licenses

The following licenses are available for use on the BES-53248 cluster switch:

License type	License details	Supported firmware version
SW-BES-53248A2-8P-2P	Broadcom 8PT-10G25G + 2PT-40G100G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later
SW-BES-53248A2-8P-1025G	Broadcom 8 Port 10G25G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later
SW-BES53248A2-6P-40-100G	Broadcom 6 Port 40G100G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later

Legacy licenses

The following table lists the legacy licenses that were available for use on the BES-53248 cluster switch:

License type	License details	Supported firmware version
SW-BES-53248A1-G1-8P-LIC	Broadcom 8P 10-25,2P40-100 License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.3.3 and later
SW-BES-53248A1-G1-16P-LIC	Broadcom 16P 10-25,4P40-100 License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.3.3 and later
SW-BES-53248A1-G1-24P-LIC	Broadcom 24P 10-25,6P40-100 License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.3.3 and later
SW-BES54248-40-100G-LIC	Broadcom 6Port 40G100G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later
SW-BES53248-8P-10G25G-LIC	Broadcom 8Port 10G25G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later
SW-BES53248-16P-1025G-LIC	Broadcom 16Port 10G25G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later

License type	License details	Supported firmware version
SW-BES53248-24P-1025G-LIC	Broadcom 24Port 10G25G License Key, X190005/R	EFOS 3.4.4.6 and later

A license is not required for the base configuration.

Install license files

Follow these steps to install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches.

Steps

1. Connect the cluster switch to the management network.
2. Use the `ping` command to verify connectivity to the server hosting EFOS, licenses, and the RCF file.

   Show example

   This example verifies that the switch is connected to the server at IP address 172.19.2.1:

   ```
   (cs2)# ping 172.19.2.1
   Pinging 172.19.2.1 with 0 bytes of data:

   Reply From 172.19.2.1: icmp_seq = 0. time= 5910 usec.
   ```

3. Check the current license usage on switch cs2:

   `show license`

   Show example

   ```
   (cs2)# show license
   Reboot needed................................. No
   Number of active licenses..................... 0

   License Index  License Type     Status
   -------------- ---------------- -----------

   No license file found.
   ```

4. Install the license file.

   Repeat this step to load more licenses and to use different key index numbers.

Show example

The following example uses SFTP to copy a license file to a key index 1.

```
(cs2)# copy sftp://root@172.19.2.1/var/lib/tftpboot/license.dat
nvram:license-key 1
Remote Password:**

Mode.......................................... SFTP
Set Server IP................................. 172.19.2.1
Path.......................................... /var/lib/tftpboot/
Filename...................................... license.dat
Data Type..................................... license

Management access will be blocked for the duration of the transfer
Are you sure you want to start? (y/n) y

File transfer in progress. Management access will be blocked for the
duration of the transfer. Please wait...


License Key transfer operation completed successfully. System reboot
is required.
```

5. Display all current license information and note the license status before switch cs2 is rebooted:

```
show license
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show license

Reboot needed................................. Yes
Number of active licenses..................... 0


License Index  License Type      Status
-------------- ----------------- -------------------------------
1              Port              License valid but not applied
```

6. Display all licensed ports:

```
show port all | exclude Detach
```

The ports from the additional license files are not displayed until after the switch is rebooted.

Show example

```
(cs2)# show port all | exclude Detach

                 Admin     Physical   Physical   Link   Link    LACP
Actor
Intf      Type   Mode      Mode       Status     Status Trap    Mode
Timeout
--------- ------ --------- ---------- ---------- ------ -------
------ --------
0/1              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/2              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/3              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/4              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/5              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/6              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/7              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/8              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/9              Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/10             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/11             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/12             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/13             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/14             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/15             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/16             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/55             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
0/56             Disable   Auto                  Down   Enable
Enable long
```

7. Reboot the switch:

```
reload
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# reload

The system has unsaved changes.
Would you like to save them now? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully .

Configuration Saved!
Are you sure you would like to reset the system? (y/n) y
```

8. Check that the new license is active and note that the license has been applied:

```
show license
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show license

Reboot needed.................................. No
Number of installed licenses................... 1
Total Downlink Ports enabled................... 16
Total Uplink Ports enabled..................... 8

License Index  License Type              Status
-------------- -------------------------
-----------------------------------
1              Port                      License applied
```

9. Check that all new ports are available:

```
show port all | exclude Detach
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show port all | exclude Detach

                 Admin     Physical   Physical   Link   Link    LACP
Actor
Intf      Type   Mode      Mode       Status     Status Trap    Mode
Timeout
--------- ------ --------- ---------- ---------- ------ -------
------ --------
0/1              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/2              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/3              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/4              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/5              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/6              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/7              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/8              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/9              Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/10             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/11             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/12             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/13             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/14             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/15             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/16             Disable    Auto                 Down   Enable
Enable long
0/49             Disable   100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/50             Disable   100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
```

```
0/51              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
0/52              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
0/53              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
0/54              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
0/55              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
0/56              Disable   100G Full            Down    Enable
Enable long
```

When installing additional licenses, you must configure the new interfaces manually. Do not re-apply an RCF to an existing working production switch.

Troubleshoot install issues

Where problems arise when installing a license, run the following debug commands before running the `copy` command again.

Debug commands to use: `debug transfer` and `debug license`

Show example

```
(cs2)# debug transfer
Debug transfer output is enabled.
(cs2)# debug license
Enabled capability licensing debugging.
```

When you run the `copy` command with the `debug transfer` and `debug license` options enabled, the log output is returned.

Show example

```
transfer.c(3083):Transfer process  key or certificate file type = 43
transfer.c(3229):Transfer process  key/certificate cmd = cp
/mnt/download//license.dat.1 /mnt/fastpath/ >/dev/null 2>&1CAPABILITY
LICENSING :
Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: License file with index 1 added.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Validating hash value
29de5e9a8af3e510f1f16764a13e8273922d3537d3f13c9c3d445c72a180a2e6.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Parsing JSON buffer {
  "license": {
    "header": {
      "version": "1.0",
      "license-key": "964B-2D37-4E52-BA14",
      "serial-number": "QTFCU38290012",
      "model": "BES-53248"
  },
  "description": "",
  "ports": "0+6"
  }
}.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: License data does not
contain 'features' field.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Serial number
QTFCU38290012 matched.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Model BES-53248
matched.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Feature not found in
license file with index = 1.
CAPABILITY LICENSING : Fri Sep 11 13:41:32 2020: Applying license file
1.
```

Check for the following in the debug output:

- Check that the Serial number matches: `Serial number QTFCU38290012 matched.`
- Check that the switch Model matches: `Model BES-53248 matched.`
- Check that the specified license index was not used previously. Where a license index is already used, the following error is returned: `License file /mnt/download//license.dat.1 already exists.`
- A port license is not a feature license. Therefore, the following statement is expected: `Feature not found in license file with index = 1.`

Use the `copy` command to back up port licenses to the server:

```
(cs2)# copy nvram:license-key 1
scp://<UserName>@<IP_address>/saved_license_1.dat
```

If you need to downgrade the switch software from version 3.4.4.6, the licenses are removed. This is expected behavior.

You must install an appropriate older license before reverting to an older version of the software.

Activate newly licensed ports

To activate newly licensed ports, you need to edit the latest version of the RCF and uncomment the applicable port details.

The default license activates ports 0/1 to 0/16 and 0/55 to 0/56 while the newly licensed ports will be between ports 0/17 to 0/54 depending on the type and number of licenses available. For example, to activate the SW-BES54248-40-100G-LIC license, you must uncomment the following section in the RCF:

Show example

```
.
.
!
! 2-port or 6-port 40/100GbE node port license block
!
interface 0/49
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
!speed 100G full-duplex
speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
datacenter-bridging
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
interface 0/50
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
!speed 100G full-duplex
speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
datacenter-bridging
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
interface 0/51
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
speed 100G full-duplex
!speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
```

```
datacenter-bridging
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
interface 0/52
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
speed 100G full-duplex
!speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
datacenter-bridging
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
interface 0/53
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
speed 100G full-duplex
!speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
datacenter-bridging
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
interface 0/54
no shutdown
description "40/100GbE Node Port"
speed 100G full-duplex
!speed 40G full-duplex
service-policy in WRED_100G
spanning-tree edgeport
mtu 9216
switchport mode trunk
datacenter-bridging
```

```
priority-flow-control mode on
priority-flow-control priority 5 no-drop
exit
exit
!
.
.
```

For high-speed ports between 0/49 to 0/54 inclusive, uncomment each port but only uncomment one **speed** line in the RCF for each of these ports, either: **speed 100G full-duplex** or **speed 40G full-duplex** as shown in the example. For low-speed ports between 0/17 to 0/48 inclusive, uncomment the entire 8-port section when an appropriate license has been activated.

What's next?

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF).

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF)

You can install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) after configuring the BES-53248 cluster switch and after applying the new licenses.

If you are upgrading an RCF from an older version, you must reset the Broadcom switch settings and perform basic configuration to re-apply the RCF. You must perform this operation every time you want to upgrade or change an RCF. See the KB article for details.

Review requirements

Before you begin

- A current backup of the switch configuration.
- A fully functioning cluster (no errors in the logs or similar issues).
- The current RCF file, available from the Broadcom Cluster Switches page.
- A boot configuration in the RCF that reflects the desired boot images, required if you are installing only EFOS and keeping your current RCF version. If you need to change the boot configuration to reflect the current boot images, you must do so before reapplying the RCF so that the correct version is instantiated on future reboots.
- A console connection to the switch, required when installing the RCF from a factory-default state. This requirement is optional if you have used the Knowledge Base article How to clear configuration on a Broadcom interconnect switch while retaining remote connectivity to clear the configuration, beforehand.

Suggested documentation

- Consult the switch compatibility table for the supported ONTAP and RCF versions. See the EFOS Software download page. Note that there can be command dependencies between the command syntax in the RCF and that found in versions of EFOS.
- Refer to the appropriate software and upgrade guides available on the Broadcom site for complete documentation on the BES-53248 switch upgrade and downgrade procedures.

Install the configuration file

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the two BES-53248 switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The node names are cluster1-01, cluster1-02, cluster1-03, and cluster1-04.
- The cluster LIF names are cluster1-01_clus1, cluster1-01_clus2, cluster1-02_clus1, cluster1-02_clus2, cluster1-03_clus1, cluster1-03_clus2, cluster1-04_clus1, and cluster1-04_clus2.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The examples in this procedure use four nodes. These nodes use two 10GbE cluster interconnect ports `e0a` and `e0b`. See the Hardware Universe to verify the correct cluster ports on your platforms.

> The command outputs might vary depending on different releases of ONTAP.

About this task

The procedure requires the use of both ONTAP commands and Broadcom switch commands; ONTAP commands are used unless otherwise indicated.

No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

> Before installing a new switch software version and RCFs, use the KB: How to clear configuration on a Broadcom interconnect switch while retaining remote connectivity. If you must erase the switch settings completely, then you will need to perform the basic configuration again. You must be connected to the switch using the serial console, since a complete configuration erasure resets the configuration of the management network.

Step 1: Prepare for the installation

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh`

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

   The following command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

   ```
   cluster1::*> system node autosupport invoke -node \* -type all -message
   MAINT=2h
   ```

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

```
set -privilege advanced
```

The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

3. Display the cluster ports on each node that are connected to the cluster switches: `network device-discovery show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
--------
cluster1-01/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/2              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/2              BES-
53248
cluster1-02/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/1              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/1              BES-
53248
cluster1-03/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/4              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/4              BES-
53248
cluster1-04/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/3              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/3              BES-
53248
cluster1::*>
```

4. Check the administrative and operational status of each cluster port.
   a. Verify that all the cluster ports are up with a healthy status: `network port show –role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: cluster1-01

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false

Node: cluster1-02

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
8 entries were displayed.

Node: cluster1-03

   Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

```
Node: cluster1-04

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
cluster1::*>
```

b. Verify that all the cluster interfaces (LIFs) are on the home port: `network interface show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network
Current       Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- -----------------
------------ ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up     169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01  e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up     169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01  e0b     true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up     169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02  e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up     169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02  e0b     true
            cluster1-03_clus1  up/up     169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03  e0a     true
            cluster1-03_clus2  up/up     169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03  e0b     true
            cluster1-04_clus1  up/up     169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04  e0a     true
            cluster1-04_clus2  up/up     169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04  e0b     true
```

5. Verify that the cluster displays information for both cluster switches.

ONTAP 9.8 and later

Beginning with ONTAP 9.8, use the command: `system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address          Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
---------------
cs1                         cluster-network    10.228.143.200   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510008
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.228.143.202   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510009
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

ONTAP 9.7 and earlier

For ONTAP 9.7 and earlier, use the command: `system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address          Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
---------------
cs1                         cluster-network    10.228.143.200   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510008
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.228.143.202   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510009
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

6. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert false
```

Step 2: Configure ports

1. On cluster switch cs2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes.

```
(cs2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(cs2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
```

2. Verify that the cluster LIFs have migrated to the ports hosted on cluster switch cs1. This might take a few seconds.

`network interface show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ----------------- ---------- ------------------
------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1 up/up      169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01   e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2 up/up      169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01   e0a     false
            cluster1-02_clus1 up/up      169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02   e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2 up/up      169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02   e0a     false
            cluster1-03_clus1 up/up      169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03   e0a     true
            cluster1-03_clus2 up/up      169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03   e0a     false
            cluster1-04_clus1 up/up      169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04   e0a     true
            cluster1-04_clus2 up/up      169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04   e0a     false
cluster1::*>
```

3. Verify that the cluster is healthy: `cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  -------
cluster1-01          true    true          false
cluster1-02          true    true          false
cluster1-03          true    true          true
cluster1-04          true    true          false
```

4. If you have not already done so, save the current switch configuration by copying the output of the following command to a log file: `show running-config`

5. Clean the configuration on switch cs2 and perform a basic setup.

> When updating or applying a new RCF, you must erase the switch settings and perform basic configuration. You must be connected to the switch using the serial console to erase switch settings.

a. SSH into the switch.

   Only proceed when all the cluster LIFs have been removed from the ports on the switch and the switch is prepared to have the configuration cleared.

b. Enter privilege mode:

```
(cs2)> enable

(cs2)#
```

c. Copy and paste the following commands to remove the previous RCF configuration (depending on the previous RCF version used, some commands might generate an error if a particular setting is not present):

Show example

```
clear config interface 0/1-0/56
y
clear config interface lag 1
y
configure
deleteport 1/1 all
no policy-map CLUSTER
no policy-map WRED_25G
no policy-map WRED_100G
no class-map CLUSTER
no class-map HA
no class-map RDMA
no classofservice dot1p-mapping
no random-detect queue-parms 0
no random-detect queue-parms 1
no random-detect queue-parms 2
no random-detect queue-parms 3
no random-detect queue-parms 4
no random-detect queue-parms 5
no random-detect queue-parms 6
no random-detect queue-parms 7
no cos-queue min-bandwidth
no cos-queue random-detect 0
no cos-queue random-detect 1
no cos-queue random-detect 2
no cos-queue random-detect 3
no cos-queue random-detect 4
no cos-queue random-detect 5
no cos-queue random-detect 6
no cos-queue random-detect 7
exit
vlan database
no vlan 17
no vlan 18
exit
```

d. Save the running configuration to the startup configuration:

Show example

```
(cs2)# write memory

This operation may take a few minutes.
Management interfaces will not be available during this time.

Are you sure you want to save? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully .


Configuration Saved!
```

e. Perform a reboot of the switch:

Show example

```
(cs2)# reload

Are you sure you would like to reset the system? (y/n) y
```

f. Log in to the switch again using SSH to complete the RCF installation.

6. If additional port licenses have been installed on the switch, you must modify the RCF to configure the additional licensed ports. See Activate newly licensed ports for details.
7. Copy the RCF to the bootflash of switch cs2 using one of the following transfer protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, or SCP.

   This example shows SFTP being used to copy an RCF to the bootflash on switch cs2:

Show example

```
(cs2)# copy sftp://172.19.2.1/tmp/BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-Cluster-HA.txt
nvram:script BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-Cluster-HA.scr
Remote Password:**
Mode........................................... SFTP
Set Server IP.................................. 172.19.2.1
Path........................................... //tmp/
Filename....................................... BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-
Cluster-HA.txt
Data Type...................................... Config Script
Destination Filename........................... BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-
Cluster-HA.scr
Management access will be blocked for the duration of the transfer
Are you sure you want to start? (y/n) y
SFTP Code transfer starting...
File transfer operation completed successfully.
```

8. Verify that the script was downloaded and saved to the file name you gave it:

```
script list
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# script list

Configuration Script Name                   Size(Bytes)  Date of
Modification
-----------------------------------------   -----------
--------------------
BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-Cluster-HA.scr           2241         2020 09 30
05:41:00

1 configuration script(s) found.
```

9. Apply the script to the switch:

```
script apply
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# script apply BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-Cluster-HA.scr

Are you sure you want to apply the configuration script? (y/n) y

The system has unsaved changes.
Would you like to save them now? (y/n) y
Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.
Configuration Saved!

Configuration script 'BES-53248_RCF_v1.9-Cluster-HA.scr' applied.
```

10. Examine the banner output from the `show clibanner` command. You must read and follow these instructions to ensure the proper configuration and operation of the switch.

Show example

```
(cs2)# show clibanner

Banner Message configured :
=========================
BES-53248 Reference Configuration File v1.9 for Cluster/HA/RDMA

Switch   : BES-53248
Filename : BES-53248-RCF-v1.9-Cluster.txt
Date     : 10-26-2022
Version  : v1.9
Port Usage:
Ports 01 - 16: 10/25GbE Cluster Node Ports, base config
Ports 17 - 48: 10/25GbE Cluster Node Ports, with licenses
Ports 49 - 54: 40/100GbE Cluster Node Ports, with licenses, added
right to left
Ports 55 - 56: 100GbE Cluster ISL Ports, base config
NOTE:
- The 48 SFP28/SFP+ ports are organized into 4-port groups in terms
of port
speed:
Ports 1-4, 5-8, 9-12, 13-16, 17-20, 21-24, 25-28, 29-32, 33-36, 37-
40, 41-44,
45-48
The port speed should be the same (10GbE or 25GbE) across all ports
in a 4-port
group
- If additional licenses are purchased, follow the 'Additional Node
Ports
activated with Licenses' section for instructions
- If SSH is active, it will have to be re-enabled manually after
'erase
startup-config'
command has been executed and the switch rebooted
```

11. On the switch, verify that the additional licensed ports appear after the RCF is applied:

```
show port all | exclude Detach
```

Show example

```
(cs2)# show port all | exclude Detach

                 Admin     Physical     Physical   Link   Link
LACP   Actor
Intf      Type   Mode      Mode         Status     Status Trap
Mode   Timeout
--------- ------ --------- ------------ ---------- ------ -------
------ --------
0/1              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/2              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/3              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/4              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/5              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/6              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/7              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/8              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/9              Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/10             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/11             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/12             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/13             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/14             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/15             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/16             Enable    Auto                    Down   Enable
Enable long
0/49             Enable    40G Full                Down   Enable
Enable long
0/50             Enable    40G Full                Down   Enable
Enable long
```

```
0/51              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/52              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/53              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/54              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/55              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
0/56              Enable    100G Full             Down   Enable
Enable long
```

12. Verify on the switch that your changes have been made:

    `show running-config`

```
(cs2)# show running-config
```

13. Save the running configuration so that it becomes the startup configuration when you reboot the switch:

    `write memory`

    Show example

```
(cs2)# write memory
This operation may take a few minutes.
Management interfaces will not be available during this time.

Are you sure you want to save? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.

Configuration Saved!
```

14. Reboot the switch and verify that the running configuration is correct:

    `reload`

Show example

```
(cs2)# reload

Are you sure you would like to reset the system? (y/n) y

System will now restart!
```

15. On cluster switch cs2, bring up the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes.

```
(cs2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(cs2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# no shutdown
```

16. Verify the ports on switch cs2: `show interfaces status all | exclude Detach`

Show example

```
(cs1)# show interfaces status all | exclude Detach

                                Link    Physical    Physical
Media       Flow
Port       Name                 State   Mode        Status      Type
Control     VLAN
---------  -------------------  ------  ----------  ----------
----------  ----------  ------
.
.
.
0/16       10/25GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/17       10/25GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/18       10/25GbE Node Port   Up      25G Full    25G Full
25GBase-SR  Inactive    Trunk
0/19       10/25GbE Node Port   Up      25G Full    25G Full
25GBase-SR  Inactive    Trunk
.
.
.
0/50       40/100GbE Node Port  Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/51       40/100GbE Node Port  Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/52       40/100GbE Node Port  Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/53       40/100GbE Node Port  Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/54       40/100GbE Node Port  Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/55       Cluster   ISL Port   Up      Auto        100G Full
Copper      Inactive    Trunk
0/56       Cluster   ISL Port   Up      Auto        100G Full
Copper      Inactive    Trunk
```

17. Verify the health of cluster ports on the cluster.
    a. Verify that e0b ports are up and healthy across all nodes in the cluster: `network port show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: cluster1-01

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health  Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- -----
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: cluster1-02


Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health  Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- -----
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: cluster1-03

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health  Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- -----
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
```

```
Node: cluster1-04

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health  Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- -----
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
```

b. Verify the switch health from the cluster.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- -----------------
--------
cluster1-01/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/2
BES-53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/2
BES-53248
cluster01-2/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/1
BES-53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/1
BES-53248
cluster01-3/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/4
BES-53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/4
BES-53248
cluster1-04/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/3
BES-53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/2
BES-53248
```

ONTAP 9.8 and later

Beginning with ONTAP 9.8, use the command: `system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address          Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
---------------
cs1                         cluster-network    10.228.143.200   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510008
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.228.143.202   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510009
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

ONTAP 9.7 and earlier

For ONTAP 9.7 and earlier, use the command: `system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address          Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
---------------
cs1                         cluster-network    10.228.143.200   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510008
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.228.143.202   BES-
53248
           Serial Number: QTWCU22510009
            Is Monitored: true
                  Reason: None
        Software Version: 3.10.0.3
          Version Source: CDP/ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

18. On cluster switch cs1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes.

    The following example uses the interface example output:

```
(cs1)# configure
(cs1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(cs1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
```

19. Verify that the cluster LIFs have migrated to the ports hosted on switch cs2. This might take a few seconds.
    `network interface show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network            Current
Current  Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port     Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- ------------------
------------------ -------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01        e0a      false
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01        e0b      true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02        e0a      false
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02        e0b      true
            cluster1-03_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03        e0a      false
            cluster1-03_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03        e0b      true
            cluster1-04_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04        e0a      false
            cluster1-04_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04        e0b      true
cluster1::*>
```

20. Verify that the cluster is healthy: `cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health   Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- -------- ------------- -------
cluster1-01          true     true          false
cluster1-02          true     true          false
cluster1-03          true     true          true
cluster1-04          true     true          false
```

21. Repeat steps 4 to 14 on switch cs1.

22. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs: `cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver`

```
Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true
```

23. Reboot switch cs1. You do this to trigger the cluster LIFs to revert to their home ports. You can ignore the “cluster ports down” events reported on the nodes while the switch reboots.

Show example

```
(cs1)# reload
The system has unsaved changes.
Would you like to save them now? (y/n) y
Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.
Configuration Saved! System will now restart!
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. On switch cs1, verify that the switch ports connected to the cluster ports are **up**.

Show example

```
(cs1)# show interfaces status all | exclude Detach

                                 Link    Physical    Physical
Media       Flow
Port       Name                  State   Mode        Status      Type
Control     VLAN
---------  -------------------   ------  ----------  ----------
----------  ----------  ------
.
.
.
0/16       10/25GbE Node Port    Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/17       10/25GbE Node Port    Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/18       10/25GbE Node Port    Up      25G Full    25G Full
25GBase-SR  Inactive    Trunk
0/19       10/25GbE Node Port    Up      25G Full    25G Full
25GBase-SR  Inactive    Trunk
.
.
.
0/50       40/100GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/51       40/100GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/52       40/100GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/53       40/100GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/54       40/100GbE Node Port   Down    Auto
Inactive    Trunk
0/55       Cluster   ISL Port    Up      Auto        100G Full
Copper      Inactive    Trunk
0/56       Cluster   ISL Port    Up      Auto        100G Full
Copper      Inactive    Trunk
```

2. Verify that the ISL between switches cs1 and cs2 is functional: `show port-channel 1/1`

Show example

```
(cs1)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port-channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)
Mbr     Device/       Port      Port
Ports   Timeout       Speed     Active
------- ------------- --------- -------
0/55    actor/long    Auto      True
        partner/long
0/56    actor/long    Auto      True
        partner/long
```

3. Verify that the cluster LIFs have reverted to their home port: `network interface show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- ------------------
------------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01         e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01         e0b     true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02         e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02         e0b     true
            cluster1-03_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03         e0a     true
            cluster1-03_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03         e0b     true
            cluster1-04_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04         e0a     true
            cluster1-04_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04         e0b     true
```

4. Verify that the cluster is healthy: `cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------- -------
cluster1-01          true    true          false
cluster1-02          true    true          false
cluster1-03          true    true          true
cluster1-04          true    true          false
```

5. Ping the remote cluster interfaces to verify connectivity: `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node local
Host is cluster1-03
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster cluster1-03_clus1 169.254.1.3 cluster1-03 e0a
Cluster cluster1-03_clus2 169.254.1.1 cluster1-03 e0b
Cluster cluster1-04_clus1 169.254.1.6 cluster1-04 e0a
Cluster cluster1-04_clus2 169.254.1.7 cluster1-04 e0b
Cluster cluster1-01_clus1 169.254.3.4 cluster1-01 e0a
Cluster cluster1-01_clus2 169.254.3.5 cluster1-01 e0b
Cluster cluster1-02_clus1 169.254.3.8 cluster1-02 e0a
Cluster cluster1-02_clus2 169.254.3.9 cluster1-02 e0b
Local = 169.254.1.3 169.254.1.1
Remote = 169.254.1.6 169.254.1.7 169.254.3.4 169.254.3.5 169.254.3.8
169.254.3.9
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
............
Basic connectivity succeeds on 12 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................................................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 12 path(s):
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.1.6
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.1.7
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.4
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.5
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.8
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.9
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.1.6
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.1.7
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.4
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.5
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.8
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.9
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 12 path(s)
RPC status:
6 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
6 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

6. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   `set -privilege admin`

7. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

What's next?

Install the CSHM configuration file.

Enable SSH on BES-53248 cluster switches

If you are using the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, you must generate the SSH keys and then enable SSH on the cluster switches.

Steps

1. Verify that SSH is disabled:

   ```
   show ip ssh
   ```

   Show example

   ```
   (switch)# show ip ssh

   SSH Configuration

   Administrative Mode: .......................... Disabled
   SSH Port: ..................................... 22
   Protocol Level: ............................... Version 2
   SSH Sessions Currently Active: ................ 0
   Max SSH Sessions Allowed: ..................... 5
   SSH Timeout (mins): ........................... 5
   Keys Present: ................................. DSA(1024) RSA(1024)
   ECDSA(521)
   Key Generation In Progress: ................... None
   SSH Public Key Authentication Mode: ........... Disabled
   SCP server Administrative Mode: ............... Disabled
   ```

2. Generate the SSH keys:

   ```
   crypto key generate
   ```

Show example

```
(switch)# config

(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate rsa

Do you want to overwrite the existing RSA keys? (y/n): y


(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate dsa

Do you want to overwrite the existing DSA keys? (y/n): y


(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate ecdsa 521

Do you want to overwrite the existing ECDSA keys? (y/n): y

(switch) (Config)# aaa authorization commands "noCmdAuthList" none
(switch) (Config)# exit
(switch)# ip ssh server enable
(switch)# ip scp server enable
(switch)# ip ssh pubkey-auth
(switch)# write mem

This operation may take a few minutes.
Management interfaces will not be available during this time.
Are you sure you want to save? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.

Configuration Saved!
```

Make sure that SSH is disabled before modifying the keys otherwise a warning is reported on the switch.

3. Reboot the switch:

```
reload
```

4. Verify that SSH is enabled:

```
show ip ssh
```

Show example

```
(switch)# show ip ssh

SSH Configuration

Administrative Mode: .......................... Enabled
SSH Port: ..................................... 22
Protocol Level: ............................... Version 2
SSH Sessions Currently Active: ................ 0
Max SSH Sessions Allowed: ..................... 5
SSH Timeout (mins): ........................... 5
Keys Present: ................................. DSA(1024) RSA(1024)
ECDSA(521)
Key Generation In Progress: ................... None
SSH Public Key Authentication Mode: ........... Enabled
SCP server Administrative Mode: ............... Enabled
```

What's next?

Enable log collection.

Ethernet Switch Health Monitoring log collection

The Ethernet switch health monitor (CSHM) is responsible for ensuring the operational health of Cluster and Storage network switches and collecting switch logs for debugging purposes. This procedure guides you through the process of setting up and starting the collection of detailed **Support** logs from the switch and starts an hourly collection of **Periodic** data that is collected by AutoSupport.

Before you begin

- To enable the log collection feature, you must be running ONTAP version 9.12.1 or later and EFOS 3.8.0.2 or later.
- Switch health monitoring must be enabled for the switch. Verify this by ensuring the `Is Monitored:` field is set to **true** in the output of the `system switch ethernet show` command.

Steps

1. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

2. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

Troubleshooting

If you encounter any of the following error statuses reported by the log collection feature (visible in the output of `system switch ethernet log show`), try the corresponding debug steps:

Log collection error status	Resolution
RSA keys not present	Regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Contact NetApp support.
switch password error	Verify credentials, test SSH connectivity, and regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Review switch documentation or contact NetApp support for instructions.
ECDSA keys not present for FIPS	If FIPS mode is enabled, ECDSA keys need to be generated on the switch before retrying.
pre-existing log found	Remove the previous log collection file on the switch.

switch dump log error	Ensure the switch user has log collection permissions. Refer to the prerequisites above.

Configure SNMPv3

Follow this procedure to configure SNMPv3, which supports Ethernet switch health monitoring (CSHM).

About this task

The following commands configure an SNMPv3 username on Broadcom BES-53248 switches:

- For **no authentication**: `snmp-server user SNMPv3UserNoAuth NETWORK-OPERATOR noauth`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication**: `snmp-server user SNMPv3UserAuth NETWORK-OPERATOR [auth-md5|auth-sha]`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication with AES/DES encryption**: `snmp-server user SNMPv3UserAuthEncrypt NETWORK-OPERATOR [auth-md5|auth-sha] [priv-aes128|priv-des]`

The following command configures an SNMPv3 username on the ONTAP side: `cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name` *`SNMPv3_USER`* `-application snmp -authentication -method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress` *`ADDRESS`*

The following command establishes the SNMPv3 username with CSHM: `cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device` *`DEVICE`* `-snmp-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username` *`SNMPv3_USER`*

Steps

1. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the switch to use authentication and encryption:

   `show snmp status`

   Show example

```
(sw1)(Config)# snmp-server user <username> network-admin auth-md5
<password> priv-aes128 <password>

(cs1)(Config)# show snmp user snmp

     Name             Group Name      Auth Priv
                                      Meth Meth    Remote Engine ID
----------------- ------------------ ---- ------
-------------------------
<username>        network-admin      MD5  AES128
8000113d03d8c497710bee
```

2. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the ONTAP side:

```
security login create -user-or-group-name <username> -application snmp
-authentication-method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress 10.231.80.212
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name <username>
-application snmp -authentication-method usm -remote-switch
-ipaddress 10.231.80.212

Enter the authoritative entity's EngineID [remote EngineID]:

Which authentication protocol do you want to choose (none, md5, sha,
sha2-256)
[none]: md5

Enter the authentication protocol password (minimum 8 characters
long):

Enter the authentication protocol password again:

Which privacy protocol do you want to choose (none, des, aes128)
[none]: aes128

Enter privacy protocol password (minimum 8 characters long):
Enter privacy protocol password again:
```

3. Configure CSHM to monitor with the new SNMPv3 user:

```
system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1" -instance
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -instance

                                   Device Name: sw1
                                    IP Address: 10.228.136.24
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv2c
                                 Is Discovered: true
DEPRECATED-Community String or SNMPv3 Username: -
           Community String or SNMPv3 Username: cshm1!
                                  Model Number: BES-53248
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: 3.9.0.2
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None  <---- should
display this if SNMP settings are valid
                      Source Of Switch Version: CDP/ISDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: QTFCU3826001C
                                   RCF Version: v1.8X2 for
Cluster/HA/RDMA

cluster1::*>
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device "sw1" -snmp
-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username <username>
```

4. Verify that the serial number to be queried with the newly created SNMPv3 user is the same as detailed in the previous step after the CSHM polling period has completed.

```
system switch ethernet polling-interval show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet polling-interval show
         Polling Interval (in minutes): 5

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1" -instance
                                   Device Name: sw1
                                    IP Address: 10.228.136.24
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv3
                                 Is Discovered: true
DEPRECATED-Community String or SNMPv3 Username: -
           Community String or SNMPv3 Username: <username>
                                  Model Number: BES-53248
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: 3.9.0.2
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None  <---- should
display this if SNMP settings are valid
                      Source Of Switch Version: CDP/ISDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: QTFCU3826001C
                                   RCF Version: v1.8X2 for
Cluster/HA/RDMA
```

Upgrade switches

Overview of upgrade process for BES-53248 switches

Before configuring BES-53248 cluster switches for an upgrade, review the configuration overview.

To upgrade a BES-53248 cluster switch, follow these steps:

1. Prepare the BES-53248 cluster switch for upgrade. Prepare the controller, and then install the EFOS software, licenses, and reference configuration file (RCF). Last, verify the configuration.
2. Install the EFOS software. Download and install the Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) software on the BES-53248 cluster switch.
3. Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches. Optionally, add new ports by purchasing and installing more licenses. The switch base model is licensed for 16 10GbE or 25GbE ports and two 100GbE ports.
4. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF). Install or upgrade the RCF on the BES-53248 cluster switch, and then verify the ports for an additional license after the RCF is applied.
5. Install the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) configuration file. Install the applicable configuration file for cluster switch health monitoring.
6. Enable SSH on BES-53248 cluster switches. If you use the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, enable SSH on the switches.

7. Enable the log collection feature. Use this feature to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.
8. Verify the configuration. Use the recommended commands to verify operations after a BES-53248 cluster switch upgrade.

Upgrade the BES-53248 cluster switch

Follow these steps to upgrade the BES-53248 cluster switch.

This procedure applies to a functioning cluster and allows for a nondisruptive upgrade (NDU) and nondisruptive operation (NDO) environment. See the Knowledge Base article How to prepare ONTAP for a cluster switch upgrade.

Review requirements

Before you install the EFOS software, licenses, and the RCF file on an existing NetApp BES-53248 cluster switch, make sure that:

- The cluster is a fully functioning cluster (no error log messages or other issues).
- The cluster does not contain any defective cluster network interface cards (NICs).
- All connected ports on both cluster switches are functional.
- All cluster ports are up.
- All cluster LIFs are administratively and operationally up and on their home ports.
- The first two cluster LIFs on each node are configured on separate NICs and connected to separate cluster switch ports.
- The ONTAP `cluster ping-cluster -node node1` advanced privilege command indicates that `larger than PMTU communication` is successful on all paths.

> ⓘ There might be command dependencies between command syntax in the RCF and EFOS versions.

> ⓘ For switch compatibility, consult the compatibility table on the Broadcom cluster switches page for the supported EFOS, RCF, and ONTAP versions.

Prepare the controller

Follow this procedure to prepare the controller for a BES-53248 cluster switch upgrade.

Steps

1. Connect the cluster switch to the management network.
2. Use the ping command to verify connectivity to the server hosting EFOS, licenses, and the RCF.

   If this is an issue, use a nonrouted network and configure the service port using IP address 192.168.x or 172.19.x. You can reconfigure the service port to the production management IP address later.

Show example

This example verifies that the switch is connected to the server at IP address 172.19.2.1:

```
(cs2)# ping 172.19.2.1
Pinging 172.19.2.1 with 0 bytes of data:

Reply From 172.19.2.1: icmp_seq = 0. time= 5910 usec.
```

3. Verify that the cluster ports are healthy and have a link using the command:

   `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

The following example shows the type of output with all ports having a `Link` value of up and a `Health Status` of healthy:

```
cluster1::> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                              Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
------ ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                              Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
-----  ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
```

4. Verify that the cluster LIFs are administratively and operationally up and reside on their home ports, using the command:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

In this example, the `-vserver` parameter displays information about the LIFs that are associated with cluster ports. `Status Admin/Oper` must be up and `Is Home` must be true:

```
cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
--------- ----------   ---------- ------------------  -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1
                         up/up      169.254.217.125/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2
                         up/up      169.254.205.88/16   node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1
                         up/up      169.254.252.125/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2
                         up/up      169.254.110.131/16  node2
e0b     true
```

Install software

Follow these instructions to install the software.

1. Install the EFOS software. Download and install the Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) software on the BES-53248 cluster switch.
2. Install licenses for BES-53248 cluster switches. Optionally, add new ports by purchasing and installing more licenses. The switch base model is licensed for 16 10GbE or 25GbE ports and two 100GbE ports.
3. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF). Install or upgrade the RCF on the BES-53248 cluster switch, and then verify the ports for an additional license after the RCF is applied.
4. Install the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) configuration file. Install the applicable configuration file for cluster switch health monitoring.
5. Enable SSH on BES-53248 cluster switches. If you use the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, enable SSH on the switches.
6. Enable the log collection feature. Use this feature to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.

Verify the configuration after a BES-53248 cluster switch upgrade

You can use recommended commands to verify operations after a BES-53248 cluster switch upgrade.

Steps

1. Display information about the network ports on the cluster using the command:

   `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

   `Link` must have the value `up` and `Health Status` must be `healthy`.

   Show example

   The following example shows the output from the command:

```
cluster1::> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                              Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
------ ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                              Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
-----  ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b    Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
```

2. For each LIF, verify that `Is Home` is `true` and `Status Admin/Oper` is `up` on both nodes, using the command:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

   Show example

```
cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.217.125/16 node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.205.88/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.252.125/16 node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.110.131/16 node2
e0b     true
```

3. Verify that the `Health Status` of each node is `true` using the command:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

```
cluster1::> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  ------------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false
```

Migrate switches

Migrate CN1610 cluster switches to BES-53248 cluster switches

To migrate the CN1610 cluster switches in a cluster to Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switches, review the migration requirements and then follow the migration procedure.

The following cluster switches are supported:

- CN1610
- BES-53248

Review requirements

Verify that your configuration meets the following requirements:

- Some of the ports on BES-53248 switches are configured to run at 10GbE.
- The 10GbE connectivity from nodes to BES-53248 cluster switches have been planned, migrated, and documented.
- The cluster is fully functioning (there should be no errors in the logs or similar issues).
- Initial customization of the BES-53248 switches is complete, so that:
  - BES-53248 switches are running the latest recommended version of EFOS software.
  - Reference Configuration Files (RCFs) have been applied to the switches.
  - Any site customization, such as DNS, NTP, SMTP, SNMP, and SSH, are configured on the new switches.

Node connections

The cluster switches support the following node connections:

- NetApp CN1610: ports 0/1 through 0/12 (10GbE)
- BES-53248: ports 0/1-0/16 (10GbE/25GbE)

> ⓘ Additional ports can be activated by purchasing port licenses.

ISL ports

The cluster switches use the following inter-switch link (ISL) ports:

- NetApp CN1610: ports 0/13 through 0/16 (10GbE)
- BES-53248: ports 0/55-0/56 (100GbE)

The *NetApp Hardware Universe* contains information about ONTAP compatibility, supported EFOS firmware, and cabling to BES-53248 cluster switches.

ISL cabling

The appropriate ISL cabling is as follows:

- **Beginning:** For CN1610 to CN1610 (SFP+ to SFP+), four SFP+ optical fiber or copper direct-attach cables.
- **Final:** For BES-53248 to BES-53248 (QSFP28 to QSFP28), two QSFP28 optical transceivers/fiber or copper direct-attach cables.

Migrate the switches

Follow this procedure to migrate CN1610 cluster switches to BES-53248 cluster switches.

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The examples use two nodes, each deploying two 10 GbE cluster interconnect ports: `e0a` and `e0b`.
- The command outputs might vary depending on different releases of ONTAP software.
- The CN1610 switches to be replaced are `CL1` and `CL2`.
- The BES-53248 switches to replace the CN1610 switches are `cs1` and `cs2`.
- The nodes are `node1` and `node2`.
- The switch CL2 is replaced by cs2 first, followed with CL1 by cs1.
- The BES-53248 switches are pre-loaded with the supported versions of Reference Configuration File (RCF) and Ethernet Fabric OS (EFOS) with ISL cables connected on ports 55 and 56.
- The cluster LIF names are `node1_clus1` and `node1_clus2` for node1, and `node2_clus1` and `node2_clus2` for node2.

About this task

This procedure covers the following scenario:

- The cluster starts with two nodes connected to two CN1610 cluster switches.
- CN1610 switch CL2 is replaced by BES-53248 switch cs2:
    - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
    - Disconnect the cables from all cluster ports on all nodes connected to CL2, and then use supported cables to reconnect the ports to the new cluster switch cs2.
- CN1610 switch CL1 is replaced by BES-53248 switch cs1:
    - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
    - Disconnect the cables from all cluster ports on all nodes connected to CL1, and then use supported cables to reconnect the ports to the new cluster switch cs1.

> No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all of the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
   ```

   where x is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

The following command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

```
cluster1::*> system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message
MAINT=2h
```

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. On the new switches, confirm that the ISL is cabled and healthy between switches cs1 and cs2:

   `show port-channel`

Show example

The following example shows that the ISL ports are **up** on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
(cs1) #
```

The following example shows that the ISL ports are **up** on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
```

2. Display the cluster ports on each node that is connected to the existing cluster switches:

```
network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
```

Show example

The following example displays how many cluster interconnect interfaces have been configured in each node for each cluster interconnect switch:

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2       /cdp
             e0a    CL1                       0/2
CN1610
             e0b    CL2                       0/2
CN1610
node1       /cdp
             e0a    CL1                       0/1
CN1610
             e0b    CL2                       0/1
CN1610
```

3. Determine the administrative or operational status for each cluster interface.
    a. Verify that all the cluster ports are `up` with a `healthy` status:

    ```
    network port show -ipspace Cluster
    ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

b. Verify that all the cluster interfaces (LIFs) are on their home ports:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------
------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true
```

4. Verify that the cluster displays information for both cluster switches:

ONTAP 9.8 and later

Beginning with ONTAP 9.8, use the command: `system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                          Type             Address       Model
------------------------------ ---------------- ------------- --------
CL1                             cluster-network  10.10.1.101   CN1610
     Serial Number: 01234567
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason:
  Software Version: 1.3.0.3
    Version Source: ISDP

CL2                             cluster-network  10.10.1.102   CN1610
     Serial Number: 01234568
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason:
  Software Version: 1.3.0.3
    Version Source: ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

ONTAP 9.7 and earlier

For ONTAP 9.7 and earlier, use the command: `system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring -enabled-operational true`

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                        Type              Address       Model
----------------------------- ---------------- ------------- --------
CL1                           cluster-network  10.10.1.101   CN1610
     Serial Number: 01234567
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason:
  Software Version: 1.3.0.3
    Version Source: ISDP

CL2                           cluster-network  10.10.1.102   CN1610
     Serial Number: 01234568
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason:
  Software Version: 1.3.0.3
    Version Source: ISDP
cluster1::*>
```

5. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert false
```

6. On cluster switch CL2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs:

```
(CL2)# configure
(CL2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(CL2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
(CL2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
(CL2)(Config)# exit
(CL2)#
```

7. Verify that the cluster LIFs have failed over to the ports hosted on cluster switch CL1. This might take a few seconds.

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0a     false
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0a     false
```

8. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node         Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
---------- ------- ------------- -------
node1        true    true          false
node2        true    true          false
```

9. Move all cluster node connection cables from the old CL2 switch to the new cs2 switch.
10. Confirm the health of the network connections moved to cs2:

    `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

All cluster ports that were moved should be `up`.

11. Check neighbor information on the cluster ports:

    `network device-discovery show -protocol cdp`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2      /cdp
             e0a    CL1                       0/2
CN1610
             e0b    cs2                       0/2              BES-
53248
node1      /cdp
             e0a    CL1                       0/1
CN1610
             e0b    cs2                       0/1              BES-
53248
```

12. Confirm the switch port connections are healthy from switch cs2's perspective:

```
cs2# show port all
cs2# show isdp neighbors
```

13. On cluster switch CL1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs:

```
(CL1)# configure
(CL1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(CL1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
(CL1)(Interface 0/13-0/16)# exit
(CL1)(Config)# exit
(CL1)#
```

All cluster LIFs failover to the cs2 switch.

14. Verify that the cluster LIFs have failed over to the ports hosted on switch cs2. This might take a few seconds:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0b     false
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0b     false
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true
```

15. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

`cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node        Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
---------- ------- ------------- -------
node1       true    true          false
node2       true    true          false
```

16. Move the cluster node connection cables from CL1 to the new cs1 switch.
17. Confirm the health of the network connections moved to cs1:

`network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

All cluster ports that were moved should be `up`.

18. Check neighbor information on the cluster ports:

    `network device-discovery show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/1              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/1              BES-
53248
node2      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/2              BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/2              BES-
53248
```

19. Confirm the switch port connections are healthy from switch cs1's perspective:

```
cs1# show port all
cs1# show isdp neighbors
```

20. Verify that the ISL between cs1 and cs2 is still operational:

```
show port-channel
```

Show example

The following example shows that the ISL ports are **up** on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
(cs1) #
```

The following example shows that the ISL ports are **up** on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
```

21. Delete the replaced CN1610 switches from the cluster's switch table, if they are not automatically removed:

ONTAP 9.8 and later

Beginning with ONTAP 9.8, use the command: `system switch ethernet delete -device` *`device-name`*

```
cluster::*> system switch ethernet delete -device CL1
cluster::*> system switch ethernet delete -device CL2
```

ONTAP 9.7 and earlier

For ONTAP 9.7 and earlier, use the command: `system cluster-switch delete -device` *`device-name`*

```
cluster::*> system cluster-switch delete -device CL1
cluster::*> system cluster-switch delete -device CL2
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

   ```
   cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
   -revert true
   ```

2. Verify that the cluster LIFs have reverted to their home ports (this might take a minute):

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

   If the cluster LIFs have not reverted to their home port, manually revert them:

   `network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *`

3. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

   `cluster show`

4. Ping the remote cluster interfaces to verify connectivity:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node <name>`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2
Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69  node1     e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125  node1     e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194  node2     e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183  node2     e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:

Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

5. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

6. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

> If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

7. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

```
cluster::*> system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message
MAINT=END
```

Migrate to a switched NetApp cluster environment

If you have an existing two-node *switchless* cluster environment, you can migrate to a two-node *switched* cluster environment using Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switches, which enables you to scale beyond two nodes in the cluster.

The migration process works for all cluster node ports using optical or Twinax ports, but it is not supported on this switch if nodes are using onboard 10GBASE-T RJ45 ports for the cluster network ports.

Review requirements

Review the following requirements for the cluster environment.

- Be aware that most systems require two dedicated cluster-network ports on each controller.
- Make sure that the BES-53248 cluster switch is set up as described in Replace requirements before starting this migration process.
- For the two-node switchless configuration, ensure that:
  - The two-node switchless configuration is properly set up and functioning.
  - The nodes are running ONTAP 9.5P8 and later. Support for 40/100 GbE cluster ports starts with EFOS firmware version 3.4.4.6 and later.
  - All cluster ports are in the **up** state.
  - All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are in the **up** state and on their home ports.
- For the Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switch configuration, ensure that:
  - The BES-53248 cluster switch is fully functional on both switches.
  - Both switches have management network connectivity.
  - There is console access to the cluster switches.
  - BES-53248 node-to-node switch and switch-to-switch connections are using Twinax or fiber cables.

    The *NetApp Hardware Universe* contains information about ONTAP compatibility, supported EFOS firmware, and cabling to BES-53248 switches.
- Inter-Switch Link (ISL) cables are connected to ports 0/55 and 0/56 on both BES-53248 switches.
- Initial customization of both the BES-53248 switches is complete, so that:
  - BES-53248 switches are running the latest version of software.
  - BES-53248 switches have optional port licenses installed, if purchased.
  - Reference Configuration Files (RCFs) are applied to the switches.
- Any site customization (SMTP, SNMP, and SSH) are configured on the new switches.

Port group speed constraints

- The 48 10/25GbE (SFP28/SFP+) ports are combined into 12 x 4-port groups as follows: Ports 1-4, 5-8, 9-12, 13-16, 17-20, 21-24, 25-28, 29-32, 33-36, 37-40, 41-44, and 45-48.
- The SFP28/SFP+ port speed must be the same (10GbE or 25GbE) across all ports in the 4-port group.
- If speeds in a 4-port group are different, the switch ports will not operate correctly.

Migrate to the cluster environment

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following cluster switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the BES-53248 switches are `cs1` and `cs2`.
- The names of the cluster SVMs are `node1` and `node2`.
- The names of the LIFs are `node1_clus1` and `node1_clus2` on node 1, and `node2_clus1` and `node2_clus2` on node 2 respectively.

- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports used in this procedure are `e0a` and `e0b`.

  The *NetApp Hardware Universe* contains the latest information about the actual cluster ports for your platforms.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh`

   where x is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

   The following command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

   ```
   cluster1::*> system node autosupport invoke -node \* -type all -message
   MAINT=2h
   ```

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt (`*>`) appears.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Disable all activated node-facing ports (not ISL ports) on both the new cluster switches cs1 **and** cs2.

   > You must not disable the ISL ports.

   The following example shows that node-facing ports 1 through 16 are disabled on switch cs1:

   ```
   (cs1)# configure
   (cs1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
   (cs1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
   (cs1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
   (cs1)(Config)# exit
   ```

2. Verify that the ISL and the physical ports on the ISL between the two BES-53248 switches cs1 and cs2 are up:

   `show port-channel`

Show example

The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
(cs1) #
```

The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# show port-channel 1/1
Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port      Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed     Active
------ ------------- --------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
```

3. Display the list of neighboring devices:

`show isdp neighbors`

This command provides information about the devices that are connected to the system.

Show example

The following example lists the neighboring devices on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater
Device ID      Intf     Holdtime  Capability   Platform    Port ID
-------------- -------- --------- ------------ ----------- ---------
cs2            0/55     176       R            BES-53248   0/55
cs2            0/56     176       R            BES-53248   0/56
```

The following example lists the neighboring devices on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater
Device ID      Intf     Holdtime  Capability   Platform    Port ID
-------------- -------- --------- ------------ ----------- ---------
cs2            0/55     176       R            BES-53248   0/55
cs2            0/56     176       R            BES-53248   0/56
```

4. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

`network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
--------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy

Node: node2

                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
--------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
```

5. Verify that all cluster LIFs are up and operational:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

             Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver      Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port     Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- -----
Cluster
             node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a      true
             node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b      true
             node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a      true
             node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b      true
```

6. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert false
```

7. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0a on node1, and then connect e0a to port 1 on cluster switch cs1, using the appropriate cabling supported by the BES-53248 switches.

   The *NetApp Hardware Universe* contains more information about cabling.

8. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0a on node2, and then connect e0a to port 2 on cluster switch cs1, using the appropriate cabling supported by the BES-53248 switches.
9. Enable all node-facing ports on cluster switch cs1.

   The following example shows that ports 1 through 16 are enabled on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# configure
(cs1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(cs1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# no shutdown
(cs1)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
(cs1)(Config)# exit
```

10. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

11. Verify that all cluster LIFs are up and operational:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

         Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver  Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node         Port
Home
-------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -----------
------- ----
Cluster
         node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1        e0a
false
         node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1        e0b
true
         node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2        e0a
false
         node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2        e0b
true
```

12. Display information about the status of the nodes in the cluster:

    `cluster show`

    Show example

    The following example displays information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  ------------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false
```

13. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0b on node1, and then connect e0b to port 1 on cluster switch cs2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the BES-53248 switches.
14. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0b on node2, and then connect e0b to port 2 on cluster switch cs2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the BES-53248 switches.
15. Enable all node-facing ports on cluster switch cs2.

    The following example shows that ports 1 through 16 are enabled on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# configure
(cs2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(cs2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# no shutdown
(cs2)(Interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
(cs2)(Config)# exit
```

16. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

`network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert true
```

2. Verify that the cluster LIFs have reverted to their home ports (this might take a minute):

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

   If the cluster LIFs have not reverted to their home port, manually revert them:

   `network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *`

3. Verify that all interfaces display `true` for `Is Home`:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

   ⓘ This might take several minutes to complete.

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node        Port
Home
--------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1       e0a
true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1       e0b
true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2       e0a
true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2       e0b
true
```

4. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

   `show isdp neighbors`

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
(cs1)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater
Device ID      Intf         Holdtime  Capability   Platform -- Port
ID
-------------- ------------ --------- ------------ -----------
----------
node1          0/1          175       H            FAS2750     e0a
node2          0/2          157       H            FAS2750     e0a
cs2            0/55         178       R            BES-53248   0/55
cs2            0/56         178       R            BES-53248   0/56


(cs2)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater
Device ID      Intf         Holdtime  Capability   Platform    Port
ID
-------------- ------------ --------- ------------ -----------
------------
node1          0/1          137       H            FAS2750     e0b
node2          0/2          179       H            FAS2750     e0b
cs1            0/55         175       R            BES-53248   0/55
cs1            0/56         175       R            BES-53248   0/56
```

5. Display information about the discovered network devices in your cluster:

`network device-discovery show -protocol cdp`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2       /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/2               BES-
53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/2               BES-
53248
node1       /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/1               BES-
53248
             e0b    cs2                       0/1               BES-
53248
```

6. Verify that the settings are disabled:

`network options switchless-cluster show`

> It might take several minutes for the command to complete. Wait for the '3 minute lifetime to expire' announcement.

The `false` output in the following example shows that the configuration settings are disabled:

```
cluster1::*> network options switchless-cluster show
Enable Switchless Cluster: false
```

7. Verify the status of the node members in the cluster:

`cluster show`

Show example

The following example shows information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  --------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false
```

8. Verify that the cluster network has full connectivity using the command:

`cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node local

Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 192.168.168.26 node1 e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 192.168.168.27 node1 e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 192.168.168.28 node2 e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 192.168.168.29 node2 e0b
Local = 192.168.168.28 192.168.168.29
Remote = 192.168.168.26 192.168.168.27
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 1500 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 192.168.168.28 to Remote 192.168.168.26
    Local 192.168.168.28 to Remote 192.168.168.27
    Local 192.168.168.29 to Remote 192.168.168.26
    Local 192.168.168.29 to Remote 192.168.168.27
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

9. Change the privilege level back to admin:

```
set -privilege admin
```

10. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system node autosupport invoke -node \* -type all
-message MAINT=END
```

For more information, see: NetApp KB Article: How to suppress automatic case creation during scheduled maintenance windows

What's next?

After your migration completes, you might need to install the required configuration file to support the Ethernet Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) for BES-53248 cluster switches. See Enable log collection.

Replace switches

Replacement requirements

Before replacing the switch, make sure the following conditions are met in the current environment and on the replacement switch.

Existing cluster and network infrastructure

Make sure that:

- The existing cluster is verified as completely functional, with at least one fully connected cluster switch.
- All cluster ports are **up**.
- All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are administratively and operationally **up** and on their home ports.
- The ONTAP `cluster ping-cluster -node node1` command must indicate that the settings, `basic connectivity` and `larger than PMTU communication`, are successful on all paths.

BES-53248 replacement cluster switch

Make sure that:

- Management network connectivity on the replacement switch is functional.
- Console access to the replacement switch is in place.
- The node connections are ports 0/1 through 0/16 with default licensing.
- All Inter-Switch Link (ISL) ports are disabled on ports 0/55 and 0/56.
- The desired reference configuration file (RCF) and EFOS operating system switch image are loaded onto the switch.

- Initial customization of the switch is complete, as detailed in Configure the BES-53248 cluster switch.

Any previous site customizations, such as STP, SNMP, and SSH, are copied to the new switch.

For more information

- NetApp Support Site
- NetApp Hardware Universe

Replace a Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switch

Follow these steps to replace a defective Broadcom-supported BES-53248 cluster switch in a cluster network. This is a nondisruptive procedure (NDU).

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the existing BES-53248 switches are `cs1` and `cs2`.
- The name of the new BES-53248 switch is `newcs2`.
- The node names are `node1` and `node2`.
- The cluster ports on each node are named `e0a` and `e0b`.
- The cluster LIF names are `node1_clus1` and `node1_clus2` for node1, and `node2_clus1` and `node2_clus2` for node2.
- The prompt for changes to all cluster nodes is `cluster1::>`

About the topology

This procedure is based on the following cluster network topology:

Show example topology

```
cluster1::> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false


Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false


cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node          Port
Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1         e0a
true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1         e0b
true
```

```
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2         e0a
true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2         e0b
true


cluster1::> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface         Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/2               BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/2               BES-
53248
node1      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/1               BES-
53248
            e0b    cs2                       0/1               BES-
53248
```

```
(cs1)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater

Device ID                Intf      Holdtime  Capability Platform
Port ID
------------------------ --------- --------- ----------
---------------- ---------
node1                    0/1       175       H          FAS2750
e0a
node2                    0/2       152       H          FAS2750
e0a
cs2                      0/55      179       R          BES-53248
0/55
cs2                      0/56      179       R          BES-53248
0/56


(cs2)# show isdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater

Device ID                Intf      Holdtime  Capability Platform
Port ID
------------------------ --------- --------- ----------
---------------- ---------
node1                    0/1       129       H          FAS2750
e0b
node2                    0/2       165       H          FAS2750
e0b
cs1                      0/55      179       R          BES-53248
0/55
cs1                      0/56      179       R          BES-53248
0/56
```

Steps

1. Review the Replacement requirements.
2. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
```

where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

> The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

3. Install the appropriate Reference Configuration File (RCF) and image on the switch, newcs2, and make any necessary site preparations.

   If necessary, verify, download, and install the appropriate versions of the RCF and EFOS software for the new switch. If you have verified that the new switch is correctly set up and does not need updates to the RCF and EFOS software, continue to step 2.

   a. You can download the applicable Broadcom EFOS software for your cluster switches from the Broadcom Ethernet Switch Support site. Follow the steps on the Download page to download the EFOS file for the version of ONTAP software you are installing.

   b. The appropriate RCF is available from the Broadcom Cluster Switches page. Follow the steps on the Download page to download the correct RCF for the version of ONTAP software you are installing.

4. On the new switch, log in as `admin` and shut down all of the ports that will be connected to the node cluster interfaces (ports 1 to 16).

   > If you purchased additional licenses for additional ports, shut down these ports too.

   If the switch that you are replacing is not functional and is powered down, the LIFs on the cluster nodes should have already failed over to the other cluster port for each node.

   > No password is required to enter `enable` mode.

   Show example

```
User: admin
Password:
(newcs2)> enable
(newcs2)# config
(newcs2)(config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(newcs2)(interface 0/1-0/16)# shutdown
(newcs2)(interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
(newcs2)(config)# exit
(newcs2)#
```

5. Verify that all cluster LIFs have `auto-revert` enabled:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-revert
```

Show example topology

```
cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-
revert

Logical
Vserver   Interface    Auto-revert
--------- ------------ ------------
Cluster   node1_clus1  true
Cluster   node1_clus2  true
Cluster   node2_clus1  true
Cluster   node2_clus2  true
```

6. Shut down the ISL ports 0/55 and 0/56 on the BES-53248 switch cs1:

Show example topology

```
(cs1)# config
(cs1)(config)# interface 0/55-0/56
(cs1)(interface 0/55-0/56)# shutdown
```

7. Remove all cables from the BES-53248 cs2 switch, and then connect them to the same ports on the BES-53248 newcs2 switch.
8. Bring up the ISLs ports 0/55 and 0/56 between the cs1 and newcs2 switches, and then verify the port channel operation status.

   The Link State for port-channel 1/1 should be **up** and all member ports should be True under the Port Active heading.

Show example

This example enables ISL ports 0/55 and 0/56 and displays the Link State for port-channel 1/1 on switch cs1:

```
(cs1)# config
(cs1)(config)# interface 0/55-0/56
(cs1)(interface 0/55-0/56)# no shutdown
(cs1)(interface 0/55-0/56)# exit
(cs1)# show port-channel 1/1

Local Interface................................ 1/1
Channel Name................................... Cluster-ISL
Link State..................................... Up
Admin Mode..................................... Enabled
Type........................................... Dynamic
Port-channel Min-links......................... 1
Load Balance Option............................ 7
(Enhanced hashing mode)

Mbr    Device/       Port       Port
Ports  Timeout       Speed      Active
------ ------------- ---------- -------
0/55   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
0/56   actor/long    100G Full  True
       partner/long
```

9. On the new switch newcs2, re-enable all of the ports that are connected to the node cluster interfaces (ports 1 to 16).

> If you purchased additional licenses for additional ports, shut down these ports too.

Show example

```
User:admin
Password:
(newcs2)> enable
(newcs2)# config
(newcs2)(config)# interface 0/1-0/16
(newcs2)(interface 0/1-0/16)# no shutdown
(newcs2)(interface 0/1-0/16)# exit
(newcs2)(config)# exit
```

10. Verify that port e0b is **up**:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

The output should be similar to the following:

```
cluster1::> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                   Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- -------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                   Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- -------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/auto   -
false
```

11. On the same node as you used in the previous step, wait for the cluster LIF node1_clus2 on node1 to auto-revert.

Show example

In this example, LIF node1_clus2 on node1 is successfully reverted if `Is Home` is `true` and the port is e0b.

The following command displays information about the LIFs on both nodes. Bringing up the first node is successful if `Is Home` is `true` for both cluster interfaces and they show the correct port assignments, in this example `e0a` and `e0b` on node1.

```
cluster::> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- -----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0a     false
```

12. Display information about the nodes in a cluster:

`cluster show`

Show example

This example shows that the node health for `node1` and `node2` in this cluster is `true`:

```
cluster1::> cluster show
Node   Health   Eligibility   Epsilon
------ -------- ------------  --------
node1  true     true          true
node2  true     true          true
```

13. Confirm the following cluster network configuration:

`network port show`

Show example

```
cluster1::> network port show -ipspace Cluster
Node: node1

Ignore
                                       Speed(Mbps)            Health
Health
Port      IPspace     Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ----------- ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster     Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster     Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                        Speed(Mbps)           Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000 auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000 auto/10000
healthy  false


cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
```

```
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true
4 entries were displayed.
```

+

```
cs1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID            Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                Eth1/1         144    H           FAS2980
e0a
node2                Eth1/2         145    H           FAS2980
e0a
newcs2(FDO296348FU)  Eth1/65        176    R S I s     N9K-C92300YC
Eth1/65
newcs2(FDO296348FU)  Eth1/66        176    R S I s     N9K-C92300YC
Eth1/66


cs2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1              Eth1/1         139    H           FAS2980
e0b
node2              Eth1/2         124    H           FAS2980
e0b
cs1(FDO220329KU)   Eth1/65        178    R S I s     N9K-C92300YC
Eth1/65
cs1(FDO220329KU)   Eth1/66        178    R S I s     N9K-C92300YC
Eth1/66
```

14. Verify that the cluster network is healthy:

```
show isdp neighbors
```

Show example

```
(cs1)# show isdp neighbors
Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater
Device ID    Intf    Holdtime   Capability    Platform    Port ID
---------    ----    --------   ----------    --------    --------
node1        0/1     175        H             FAS2750     e0a
node2        0/2     152        H             FAS2750     e0a
newcs2       0/55    179        R             BES-53248   0/55
newcs2       0/56    179        R             BES-53248   0/56

(newcs2)# show isdp neighbors
Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans Bridge, B - Source Route
Bridge,
S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater

Device ID    Intf    Holdtime   Capability    Platform    Port ID
---------    ----    --------   ----------    --------    --------
node1        0/1     129        H             FAS2750     e0b
node2        0/2     165        H             FAS2750     e0b
cs1          0/55    179        R             BES-53248   0/55
cs1          0/56    179        R             BES-53248   0/56
```

15. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

What's next?

See Enable the log collection feature for the steps required to enable cluster health switch log collection used for collecting switch-related log files.

Replace Broadcom BES-53248 cluster switches with switchless connections

You can migrate from a cluster with a switched cluster network to one where two nodes are directly connected for ONTAP 9.3 and later.

Review requirements

Guidelines

Review the following guidelines:

* Migrating to a two-node switchless cluster configuration is a nondisruptive operation. Most systems have two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, but you can also use this procedure for systems with a larger number of dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, such as four, six or eight.
* You cannot use the switchless cluster interconnect feature with more than two nodes.
* If you have an existing two-node cluster that uses cluster interconnect switches and is running ONTAP 9.3 or later, you can replace the switches with direct, back-to-back connections between the nodes.

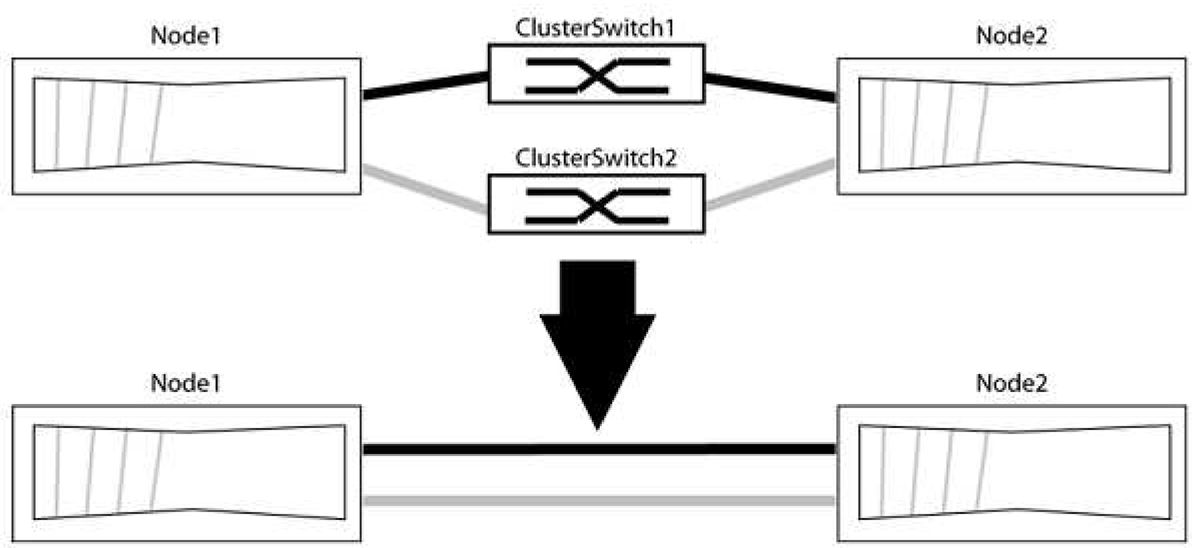
What you'll need

* A healthy cluster that consists of two nodes connected by cluster switches. The nodes must be running the same ONTAP release.
* Each node with the required number of dedicated cluster ports, which provide redundant cluster interconnect connections to support your system configuration. For example, there are two redundant ports for a system with two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node.

Migrate the switches

About this task

The following procedure removes the cluster switches in a two-node cluster and replaces each connection to the switch with a direct connection to the partner node.



About the examples

The examples in the following procedure show nodes that are using "e0a" and "e0b" as cluster ports. Your nodes might be using different cluster ports as they vary by system.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering `y` when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

   The advanced prompt `*>` appears.

2. ONTAP 9.3 and later supports automatic detection of switchless clusters, which is enabled by default.

   You can verify that detection of switchless clusters is enabled by running the advanced privilege command:

```
network options detect-switchless-cluster show
```

Show example

The following example output shows if the option is enabled.

```
cluster::*> network options detect-switchless-cluster show
   (network options detect-switchless-cluster show)
Enable Switchless Cluster Detection: true
```

If "Enable Switchless Cluster Detection" is `false`, contact NetApp support.

3. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message
   MAINT=<number_of_hours>h
   ```

   where `h` is the duration of the maintenance window in hours. The message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that they can suppress automatic case creation during the maintenance window.

   In the following example, the command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

   Show example

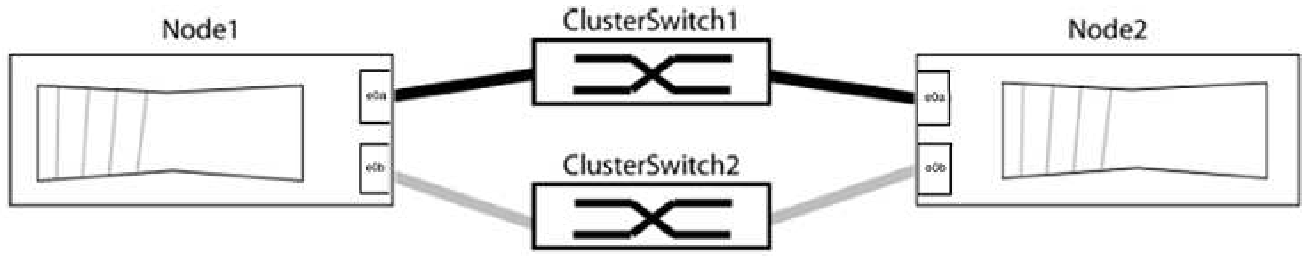
   ```
   cluster::*> system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all
   -message MAINT=2h
   ```

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Organize the cluster ports on each switch into groups so that the cluster ports in group1 go to cluster switch1 and the cluster ports in group2 go to cluster switch2. These groups are required later in the procedure.
2. Identify the cluster ports and verify link status and health:

   ```
   network port show -ipspace Cluster
   ```

   In the following example for nodes with cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b", one group is identified as “node1:e0a” and “node2:e0a” and the other group as “node1:e0b” and “node2:e0b”. Your nodes might be using different cluster ports because they vary by system.



Verify that the ports have a value of `up` for the “Link” column and a value of `healthy` for the “Health Status” column.

Show example

```
cluster::> network port show -ipspace Cluster
Node: node1

Ignore
                                             Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port  IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                             Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port  IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
4 entries were displayed.
```

3. Confirm that all the cluster LIFs are on their home ports.

Verify that the “is-home” column is `true` for each of the cluster LIFs:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home`

Show example

```
cluster::*> net int show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home
(network interface show)
vserver  lif          is-home
-------- ------------ --------
Cluster  node1_clus1  true
Cluster  node1_clus2  true
Cluster  node2_clus1  true
Cluster  node2_clus2  true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If there are cluster LIFs that are not on their home ports, revert those LIFs to their home ports:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *`

4. Disable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

5. Verify that all ports listed in the previous step are connected to a network switch:

   `network device-discovery show -port cluster_port`

   The “Discovered Device” column should be the name of the cluster switch that the port is connected to.

Show example

The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to cluster switches "cs1" and "cs2".

```
cluster::> network device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/      Local  Discovered
Protocol   Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
---------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
           e0a    cs1                       0/11       BES-53248
           e0b    cs2                       0/12       BES-53248
node2/cdp
           e0a    cs1                       0/9        BES-53248
           e0b    cs2                       0/9        BES-53248
4 entries were displayed.
```

6. Verify the cluster connectivity:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

7. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

   `cluster ring show`

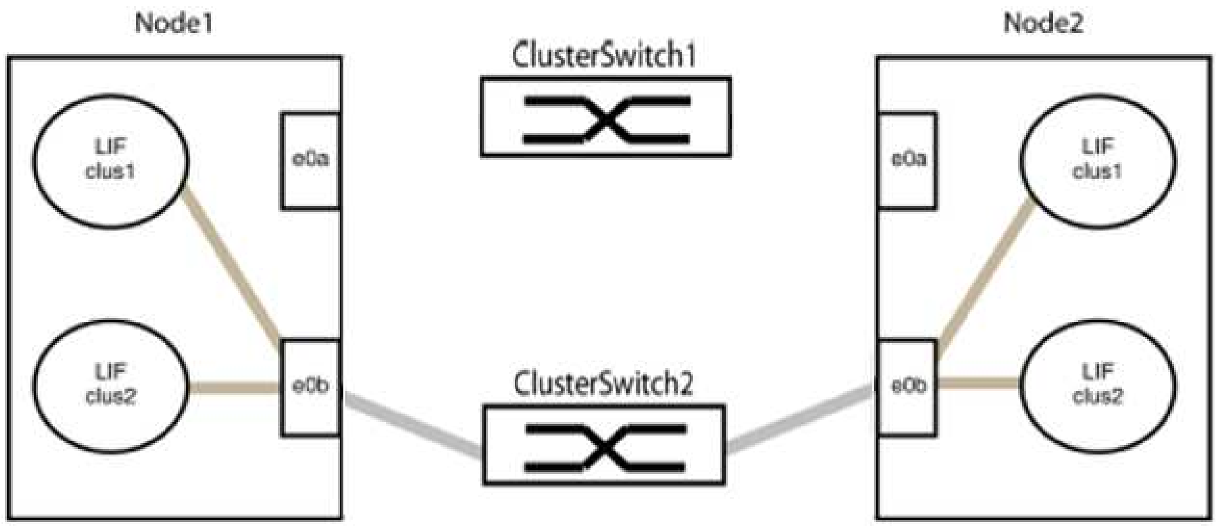
   All units must be either master or secondary.

8. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 1.

   > To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group1 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

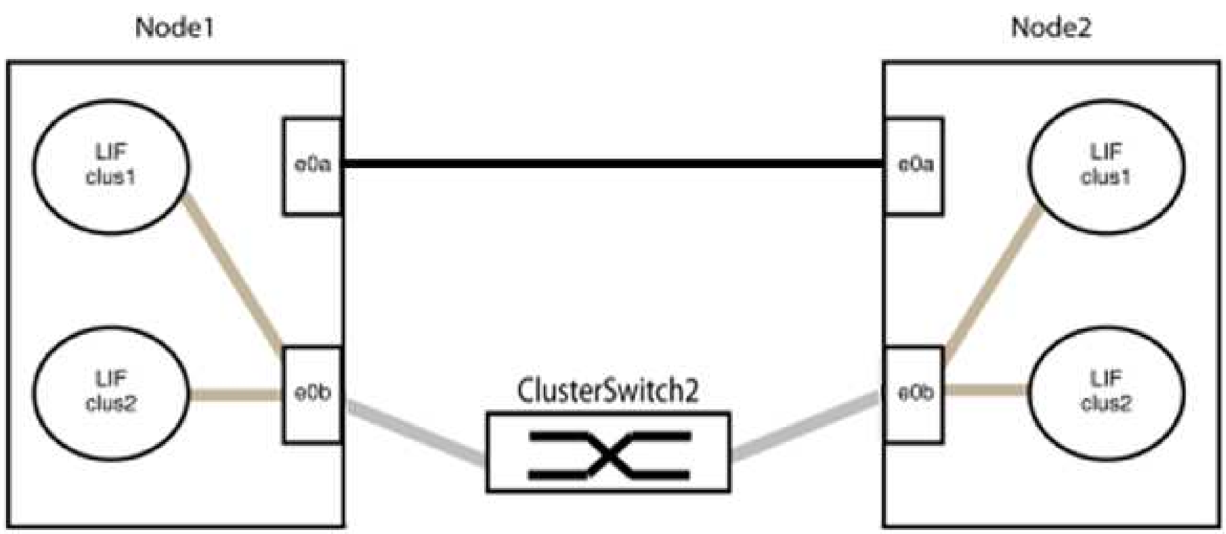
   a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group1 at the same time.

      In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0a" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the switch and port "e0b" on each node:



b. Cable the ports in group1 back-to-back.

In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2:



9. The switchless cluster network option transitions from `false` to `true`. This might take up to 45 seconds. Confirm that the switchless option is set to `true`:

   `network options switchless-cluster show`

   The following example shows that the switchless cluster is enabled:

   ```
   cluster::*> network options switchless-cluster show
   Enable Switchless Cluster: true
   ```

10. Verify that the cluster network is not disrupted:

    `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

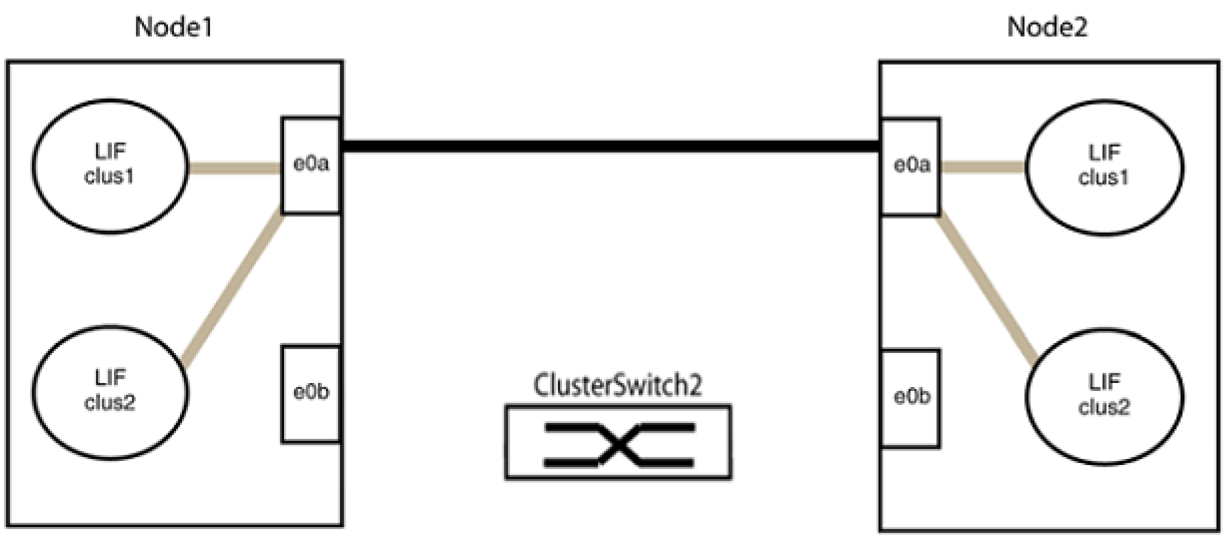
Before proceeding to the next step, you must wait at least two minutes to confirm a working back-to-back connection on group 1.

11. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 2.

To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group2 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

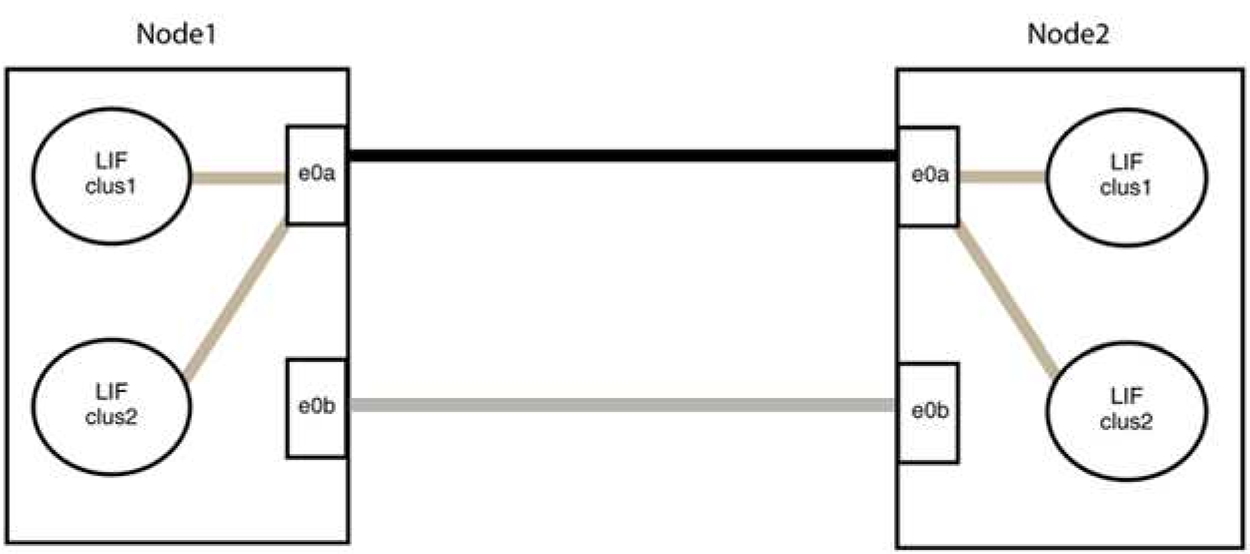
a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group2 at the same time.

   In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0b" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the direct connection between the "e0a" ports:



b. Cable the ports in group2 back-to-back.

   In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2 and "e0b" on node1 is connected to "e0b" on node2:



Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Verify that the ports on both nodes are correctly connected:

   `network device-discovery show -port` *`cluster_port`*

   Show example

   The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to the corresponding port on the cluster partner:

```
cluster::> net device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/      Local  Discovered
Protocol   Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
---------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
           e0a    node2                     e0a        AFF-A300
           e0b    node2                     e0b        AFF-A300
node1/lldp
           e0a    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0a        -
           e0b    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0b        -
node2/cdp
           e0a    node1                     e0a        AFF-A300
           e0b    node1                     e0b        AFF-A300
node2/lldp
           e0a    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0a        -
           e0b    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0b        -
8 entries were displayed.
```

2. Re-enable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true`

3. Verify that all LIFs are home. This might take a few seconds.

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster -lif` *`lif_name`*

Show example

The LIFs have been reverted if the “Is Home” column is `true`, as shown for `node1_clus2` and `node2_clus2` in the following example:

```
cluster::> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields curr-
port,is-home
vserver  lif           curr-port is-home
-------- ------------- --------- -------
Cluster  node1_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node1_clus2   e0b       true
Cluster  node2_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node2_clus2   e0b       true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If any cluster LIFS have not returned to their home ports, revert them manually from the local node:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif lif_name`

4. Check the cluster status of the nodes from the system console of either node:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example shows epsilon on both nodes to be `false`:

```
Node  Health  Eligibility Epsilon
----- ------- ----------- --------
node1 true    true        false
node2 true    true        false
2 entries were displayed.
```

5. Confirm connectivity between the cluster ports:

   `cluster ping-cluster local`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

   For more information, see NetApp KB Article 1010449: How to suppress automatic case creation during scheduled maintenance windows.

7. Change the privilege level back to admin:

```
set -privilege admin
```

Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2

Overview

Overview of installation and configuration for Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches

The Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch is part of the Cisco Nexus 9000 platform and can be installed in a NetApp system cabinet. Cluster switches allow you to build ONTAP clusters with more than two nodes.

Initial configuration overview

To initially configure a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch on systems running ONTAP, follow these steps:

1. Complete the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cabling worksheet. The sample cabling worksheet provides examples of recommended port assignments from the switches to the controllers. The blank worksheet provides a template that you can use in setting up your cluster.
2. Install the switch. Set up the switch hardware.
3. Configure the 9336C-FX2 cluster switch. Set up the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.
4. Install a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch in a NetApp cabinet. Depending on your configuration, you can install the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch and pass-through panel in a NetApp cabinet with the standard brackets that are included with the switch.
5. Prepare to install NX-OS software and RCF. Follow preliminary procedures in preparation for installing the Cisco NX-OS software and reference configuration files (RCFs).
6. Install the NX-OS software. Install the NX-OS software on the Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch.
7. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF). Install the RCF after setting up the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch for the first time. You can also use this procedure to upgrade your RCF version.

Additional information

Before you begin installation or maintenance, be sure to review the following:

- Configuration requirements
- Components and part numbers
- Required documentation
- Smart Call Home requirements

Configuration requirements for Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches

For Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review configuration and network requirements.

ONTAP support

From ONTAP 9.9.1, you can use Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches to combine storage and cluster functionality into a shared switch configuration.

If you want to build ONTAP clusters with more than two nodes, you need two supported network switches.

Configuration requirements

Make sure that:

- You have the appropriate number and type of cables and cable connectors for your switches. See the Hardware Universe.
- Depending on the type of switch you are initially configuring, you need to connect to the switch console port with the included console cable.

Network requirements

You need the following network information for all switch configurations.

- IP subnet for management network traffic
- Host names and IP addresses for each of the storage system controllers and all applicable switches
- Most storage system controllers are managed through the e0M interface by connecting to the Ethernet service port (wrench icon). On AFF A800 and AFF A700s systems, the e0M interface uses a dedicated Ethernet port.
- Refer to the Hardware Universe for the latest information.

For more information about the initial configuration of your switch, see the following guide: Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 Installation and Upgrade Guide.

Components and part numbers for Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches

For Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review the list of components and part numbers.

The following table lists the part number and description for the 9336C-FX2 switch, fans, and power supplies:

Part number	Description
X190200-CS-PE	N9K-9336C-FX2, CS, PTSX, 36PT10/25/40/100GQSFP28
X190200-CS-PI	N9K-9336C-FX2, CS, PSIN, 36PT10/25/40/100GQSFP28
X190210-FE-PE	N9K-9336C, FTE, PTSX, 36PT10/25/40/100GQSFP28
X190210-FE-PI	N9K-9336C, FTE, PSIN, 36PT10/25/40/100GQSFP28
X190002	Accessory Kit X190001/X190003
X-NXA-PAC-1100W-PE2	N9K-9336C AC 1100W PSU - Port side exhaust airflow
X-NXA-PAC-1100W-PI2	N9K-9336C AC 1100W PSU - Port side Intake airflow
X-NXA-FAN-65CFM-PE	N9K-9336C 65CFM, Port side exhaust airflow

Part number	Description
X-NXA-FAN-65CFM-PI	N9K-9336C 65CFM, Port side intake airflow

Documentation requirements for Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches

For Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review specific switch and controller documentation to set up your Cisco 9336-FX2 switches and ONTAP cluster.

Switch documentation

To set up the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches, you need the following documentation from the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches Support page:

Document title	Description
Nexus 9000 Series Hardware Installation Guide	Provides detailed information about site requirements, switch hardware details, and installation options.
Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switch Software Configuration Guides (choose the guide for the NX-OS release installed on your switches)	Provides initial switch configuration information that you need before you can configure the switch for ONTAP operation.
Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Software Upgrade and Downgrade Guide (choose the guide for the NX-OS release installed on your switches)	Provides information on how to downgrade the switch to ONTAP supported switch software, if necessary.
Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference Master Index	Provides links to the various command references provided by Cisco.
Cisco Nexus 9000 MIBs Reference	Describes the Management Information Base (MIB) files for the Nexus 9000 switches.
Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS System Message Reference	Describes the system messages for Cisco Nexus 9000 series switches, those that are informational, and others that might help diagnose problems with links, internal hardware, or the system software.
Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Release Notes (choose the notes for the NX-OS release installed on your switches)	Describes the features, bugs, and limitations for the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series.
Regulatory Compliance and Safety Information for Cisco Nexus 9000 Series	Provides international agency compliance, safety, and statutory information for the Nexus 9000 series switches.

ONTAP systems documentation

To set up an ONTAP system, you need the following documents for your version of the operating system from the ONTAP 9 Documentation Center.

Name	Description
Controller-specific *Installation and Setup Instructions*	Describes how to install NetApp hardware.
ONTAP documentation	Provides detailed information about all aspects of the ONTAP releases.
Hardware Universe	Provides NetApp hardware configuration and compatibility information.

Rail kit and cabinet documentation

To install a Cisco 9336-FX2 switch in a NetApp cabinet, see the following hardware documentation.

Name	Description
42U System Cabinet, Deep Guide	Describes the FRUs associated with the 42U system cabinet, and provides maintenance and FRU replacement instructions.
Install a Cisco 9336-FX2 switch in a NetApp Cabinet	Describes how to install a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch in a four-post NetApp cabinet.

Smart Call Home requirements

To use the Smart Call Home feature, review the following guidelines.

Smart Call Home monitors the hardware and software components on your network. When a critical system configuration occurs, it generates an email-based notification and raises an alert to all the recipients that are configured in your destination profile. To use Smart Call Home, you must configure a cluster network switch to communicate using email with the Smart Call Home system. In addition, you can optionally set up your cluster network switch to take advantage of Cisco's embedded Smart Call Home support feature.

Before you can use Smart Call Home, be aware of the following considerations:

- An email server must be in place.
- The switch must have IP connectivity to the email server.
- The contact name (SNMP server contact), phone number, and street address information must be configured. This is required to determine the origin of messages received.
- A CCO ID must be associated with an appropriate Cisco SMARTnet Service contract for your company.
- Cisco SMARTnet Service must be in place for the device to be registered.

The Cisco support site contains information about the commands to configure Smart Call Home.

Install hardware

Complete the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cabling worksheet

If you want to document the supported platforms, download a PDF of this page and complete the cabling worksheet.

The sample cabling worksheet provides examples of recommended port assignments from the switches to the controllers. The blank worksheet provides a template that you can use in setting up your cluster.

Sample cabling worksheet

The sample port definition on each pair of switches is as follows:

Cluster switch A		**Cluster switch B**	
Switch port	Node and port usage	Switch port	Node and port usage
1	4x10GbE node 1	1	4x10GbE node 1
2	4x10GbE node 2	2	4x10GbE node 2
3	4x10GbE node 3	3	4x10GbE node 3
4	4x25GbE node 4	4	4x25GbE node 4
5	4x25GbE node 5	5	4x25GbE node 5
6	4x25GbE node 6	6	4x25GbE node 6
7	40/100GbE node 7	7	40/100GbE node 7
8	40/100GbE node 8	8	40/100GbE node 8
9	40/100GbE node 9	9	40/100GbE node 9
10	40/100GbE node 10	10	40/100GbE node 10
11	40/100GbE node 11	11	40/100GbE node 11
12	40/100GbE node 12	12	40/100GbE node 12
13	40/100GbE node 13	13	40/100GbE node 13
14	40/100GbE node 14	14	40/100GbE node 14
15	40/100GbE node 15	15	40/100GbE node 15

Cluster switch A		Cluster switch B	
16	40/100GbE node 16	16	40/100GbE node 16
17	40/100GbE node 17	17	40/100GbE node 17
18	40/100GbE node 18	18	40/100GbE node 18
19	40/100GbE node 19	19	40/100GbE node 19
20	40/100GbE node 20	20	40/100GbE node 20
21	40/100GbE node 21	21	40/100GbE node 21
22	40/100GbE node 22	22	40/100GbE node 22
23	40/100GbE node 23	23	40/100GbE node 23
24	40/100GbE node 24	24	40/100GbE node 24
25 through 34	Reserved	25 through 34	Reserved
35	100GbE ISL to switch B port 35	35	100GbE ISL to switch A port 35
36	100GbE ISL to switch B port 36	36	100GbE ISL to switch A port 36

Blank cabling worksheet

You can use the blank cabling worksheet to document the platforms that are supported as nodes in a cluster. The *Supported Cluster Connections* section of the Hardware Universe defines the cluster ports used by the platform.

Cluster switch A		Cluster switch B	
1		1	
2		2	
3		3	
4		4	
5		5	

Cluster switch A		Cluster switch B	
6		6	
7		7	
8		8	
9		9	
10		10	
11		11	
12		12	
13		13	
14		14	
15		15	
16		16	
17		17	
18		18	
19		19	
20		20	
21		21	
22		22	
23		23	
24		24	
25 through 34	Reserved	25 through 34	Reserved
35	100GbE ISL to switch B port 35	35	100GbE ISL to switch A port 35

Cluster switch A		Cluster switch B	
36	100GbE ISL to switch B port 36	36	100GbE ISL to switch A port 36

See the Hardware Universe for more information on switch ports.

Install the 9336C-FX2 cluster switch

Follow this procedure to set up and configure the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.

What you'll need

- Access to an HTTP, FTP, or TFTP server at the installation site to download the applicable NX-OS and Reference Configuration File (RCF) releases.
- Applicable NX-OS version, downloaded from the Cisco Software Download page.
- Applicable licenses, network and configuration information, and cables.
- Completed cabling worksheets.
- Applicable NetApp cluster network and management network RCFs downloaded from the NetApp Support Site at mysupport.netapp.com. All Cisco cluster network and management network switches arrive with the standard Cisco factory-default configuration. These switches also have the current version of the NX-OS software but do not have the RCFs loaded.
- Required switch and ONTAP documentation.

Steps

1. Rack the cluster network and management network switches and controllers.

If you are installing the…	Then…
Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 in a NetApp system cabinet	See the *Installing a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch and pass-through panel in a NetApp cabinet* guide for instructions to install the switch in a NetApp cabinet.
Equipment in a Telco rack	See the procedures provided in the switch hardware installation guides and the NetApp installation and setup instructions.

2. Cable the cluster network and management network switches to the controllers using the completed cabling worksheets.
3. Power on the cluster network and management network switches and controllers.

What's next?

Go to Configure the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.

Configure the 9336C-FX2 cluster switch

Follow this procedure to configure the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.

What you'll need

- Access to an HTTP, FTP, or TFTP server at the installation site to download the applicable NX-OS and

Reference Configuration File (RCF) releases.

- Applicable NX-OS version, downloaded from the Cisco software download page.
- Applicable licenses, network and configuration information, and cables.
- Completed cabling worksheets.
- Applicable NetApp cluster network and management network RCFs downloaded from the NetApp Support Site at mysupport.netapp.com. All Cisco cluster network and management network switches arrive with the standard Cisco factory-default configuration. These switches also have the current version of the NX-OS software but do not have the RCFs loaded.
- Required switch and ONTAP documentation.

Steps

1. Perform an initial configuration of the cluster network switches.

   Provide applicable responses to the following initial setup questions when you first boot the switch. Your site's security policy defines the responses and services to enable.

Prompt	Response
Abort Auto Provisioning and continue with normal setup? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes**. The default is no.
Do you want to enforce secure password standard? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes**. The default is yes.
Enter the password for admin.	The default password is "admin"; you must create a new, strong password. A weak password can be rejected.
Would you like to enter the basic configuration dialog? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes** at the initial configuration of the switch.
Create another login account? (yes/no)	Your answer depends on your site's policies on alternate administrators. The default is **no**.
Configure read-only SNMP community string? (yes/no)	Respond with **no**. The default is no.
Configure read-write SNMP community string? (yes/no)	Respond with **no**. The default is no.
Enter the switch name.	Enter the switch name, which is limited to 63 alphanumeric characters.
Continue with Out-of-band (mgmt0) management configuration? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes** (the default) at that prompt. At the mgmt0 IPv4 address: prompt, enter your IP address: ip_address.

Prompt	Response
Configure the default-gateway? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes**. At the IPv4 address of the default-gateway: prompt, enter your default_gateway.
Configure advanced IP options? (yes/no)	Respond with **no**. The default is no.
Enable the telnet service? (yes/no)	Respond with **no**. The default is no.
Enabled SSH service? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes**. The default is yes. ⓘ SSH is recommended when using Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) for its log collection features. SSHv2 is also recommended for enhanced security.
Enter the type of SSH key you want to generate (dsa/rsa/rsa1).	The default is **rsa**.
Enter the number of key bits (1024-2048).	Enter the number of key bits from 1024 to 2048.
Configure the NTP server? (yes/no)	Respond with **no**. The default is no.
Configure default interface layer (L3/L2)	Respond with **L2**. The default is L2.
Configure default switch port interface state (shut/noshut)	Respond with **noshut**. The default is noshut.
Configure CoPP system profile (strict/moderate/lenient/dense)	Respond with **strict**. The default is strict.
Would you like to edit the configuration? (yes/no)	You should see the new configuration at this point. Review and make any necessary changes to the configuration you just entered. Respond with **no** at the prompt if you are satisfied with the configuration. Respond with **yes** if you want to edit your configuration settings.
Use this configuration and save it? (yes/no)	Respond with **yes** to save the configuration. This automatically updates the kickstart and system images. ⓘ If you do not save the configuration at this stage, none of the changes will be in effect the next time you reboot the switch.

2. Verify the configuration choices you made in the display that appears at the end of the setup, and make sure that you save the configuration.
3. Check the version on the cluster network switches, and if necessary, download the NetApp-supported version of the software to the switches from the Cisco software download page.

What's next?

Optionally, you can install a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch in a NetApp cabinet. Otherwise, go to Prepare to install NX-OS and RCF.

Install a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch in a NetApp cabinet

Depending on your configuration, you might need to install the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch and pass-through panel in a NetApp cabinet. Standard brackets are included with the switch.

What you'll need

- The pass-through panel kit, which is available from NetApp (part number X8784-R6).

  The NetApp pass-through panel kit contains the following hardware:

  - One pass-through blanking panel
  - Four 10-32 x .75 screws
  - Four 10-32 clip nuts
- For each switch, eight 10-32 or 12-24 screws and clip nuts to mount the brackets and slider rails to the front and rear cabinet posts.
- The Cisco standard rail kit to install the switch in a NetApp cabinet.

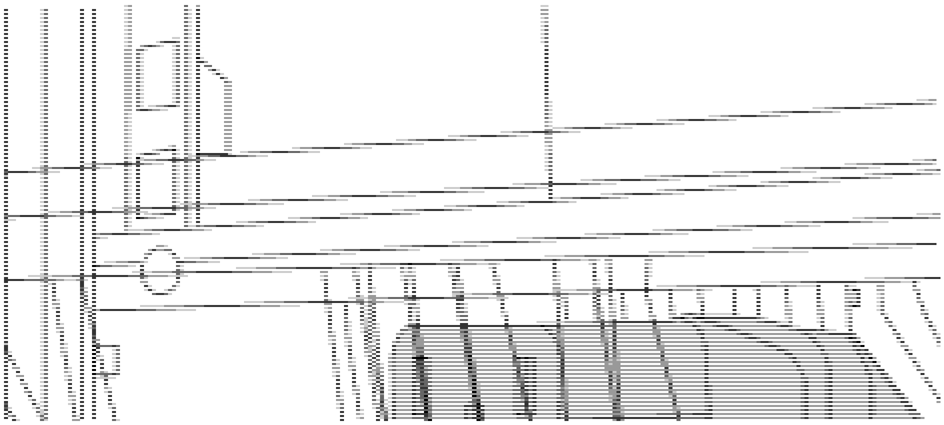
> The jumper cords are not included with the pass-through kit and should be included with your switches. If they were not shipped with the switches, you can order them from NetApp (part number X1558A-R6).

- For initial preparation requirements, kit contents, and safety precautions, see Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Hardware Installation Guide.

Steps

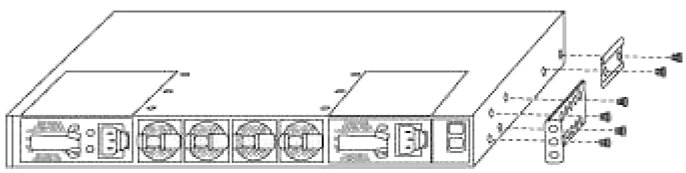
1. Install the pass-through blanking panel in the NetApp cabinet.
   a. Determine the vertical location of the switches and blanking panel in the cabinet.

      In this procedure, the blanking panel is installed in U40.
   b. Install two clip nuts on each side in the appropriate square holes for front cabinet rails.
   c. Center the panel vertically to prevent intrusion into adjacent rack space, and then tighten the screws.
   d. Insert the female connectors of both 48-inch jumper cords from the rear of the panel and through the brush assembly.

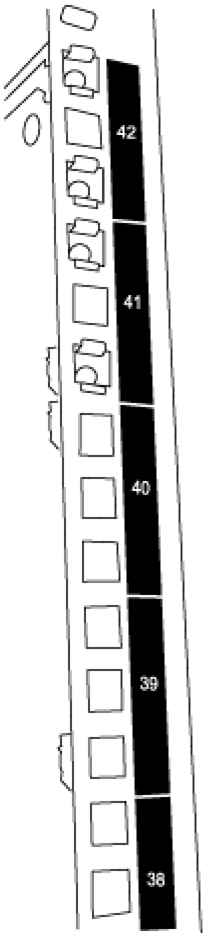


(1) Female connector of the jumper cord.

2. Install the rack-mount brackets on the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch chassis.
   a. Position a front rack-mount bracket on one side of the switch chassis so that the mounting ear is aligned with the chassis faceplate (on the PSU or fan side), and then use four M4 screws to attach the bracket to the chassis.

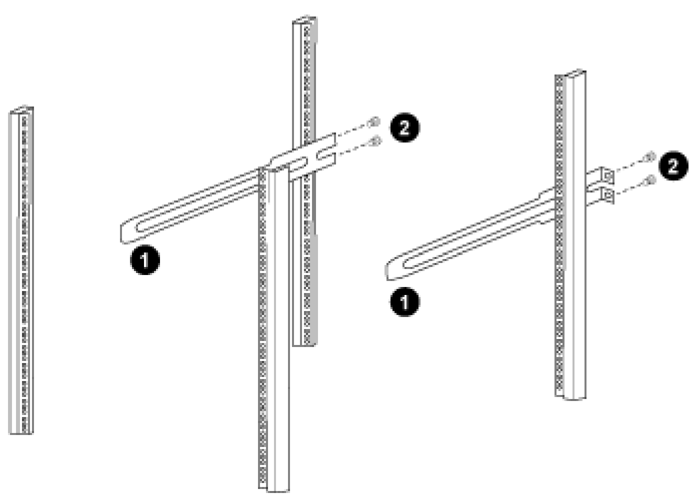


   b. Repeat step 2a with the other front rack-mount bracket on the other side of the switch.
   c. Install the rear rack-mount bracket on the switch chassis.
   d. Repeat step 2c with the other rear rack-mount bracket on the other side of the switch.
3. Install the clip nuts in the square hole locations for all four IEA posts.



The two 9336C-FX2 switches are always mounted in the top 2U of the cabinet RU41 and 42.

4. Install the slider rails in the cabinet.
   a. Position the first slider rail at the RU42 mark on the back side of the rear left post, insert screws with the matching thread type, and then tighten the screws with your fingers.



(1) As you gently slide the slider rail, align it to the screw holes in the rack.

(2) Tighten the screws of the slider rails to the cabinet posts.

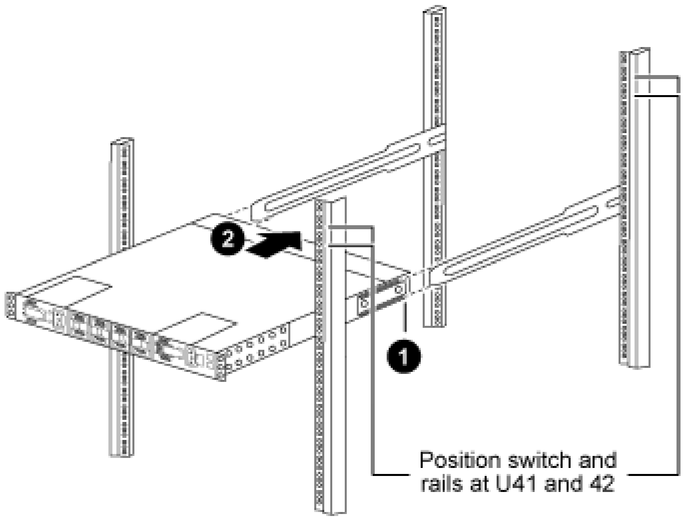
   b. Repeat step 4a for the right-side rear post.

c. Repeat steps 4a and 4b at the RU41 locations on the cabinet.

5. Install the switch in the cabinet.

> ⓘ This step requires two people: one person to support the switch from the front and another to guide the switch into the rear slider rails.

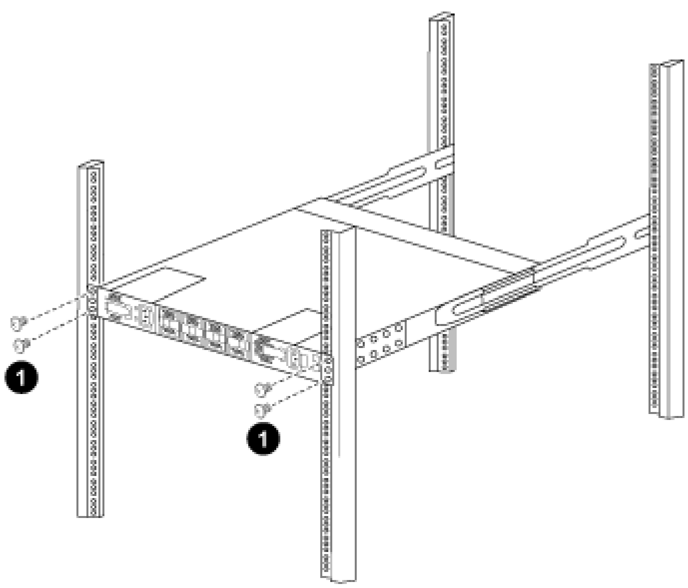
a. Position the back of the switch at RU41.



(1) As the chassis is pushed toward the rear posts, align the two rear rack-mount guides with the slider rails.

(2) Gently slide the switch until the front rack-mount brackets are flush with the front posts.

b. Attach the switch to the cabinet.



(1) With one person holding the front of the chassis level, the other person should fully tighten the four rear screws to the cabinet posts.

c. With the chassis now supported without assistance, fully tighten the front screws to the posts.

d. Repeat steps 5a through 5c for the second switch at the RU42 location.

> By using the fully installed switch as a support, it is not necessary to hold the front of the second switch during the installation process.

6. When the switches are installed, connect the jumper cords to the switch power inlets.
7. Connect the male plugs of both jumper cords to the closest available PDU outlets.

> To maintain redundancy, the two cords must be connected to different PDUs.

8. Connect the management port on each 9336C-FX2 switch to either of the management switches (if ordered) or connect them directly to your management network.

   The management port is the upper-right port located on the PSU side of the switch. The CAT6 cable for each switch needs to be routed through the pass-through panel after the switches are installed to connect to the management switches or management network.

What's next?

Configure the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.

Review cabling and configuration considerations

Before configuring your Cisco 9336C-FX2 switch, review the following considerations.

Support for NVIDIA CX6, CX6-DX, and CX7 Ethernet ports

If connecting a switch port to an ONTAP controller using NVIDIA ConnectX-6 (CX6), ConnectX-6 Dx (CX6-DX), or ConnectX-7 (CX7) NIC ports, you must hard-code the switch port speed.

```
(cs1)(config)# interface Ethernet1/19
For 100GbE speed:
(cs1)(config-if)# speed 100000
For 40GbE speed:
(cs1)(config-if)# speed 40000
(cs1)(config-if)# no negotiate auto
(cs1)(config-if)# exit
(cs1)(config)# exit
Save the changes:
(cs1)# copy running-config startup-config
```

See the Hardware Universe for more information on switch ports.

25GbE FEC requirements

FAS2820 e0a/e0b ports

FAS2820 e0a and e0b ports require FEC configuration changes to link up with 9336C-FX2 switch ports.
For switch ports e0a and e0b, the fec setting is set to `rs-cons16`.

```
(cs1)(config)# interface Ethernet1/8-9
(cs1)(config-if-range)# fec rs-cons16
(cs1)(config-if-range)# exit
(cs1)(config)# exit
Save the changes:
(cs1)# copy running-config startup-config
```

Configure software

Software install workflow for Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches

To install and configure the software for a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch and to install or upgrade the Reference Configuration File (RCF), follow these steps:

1. Prepare to install NX-OS software and RCF.
2. Install the NX-OS software.
3. Install or upgrade the Reference Configuration File (RCF).

   Install the RCF after setting up the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch for the first time. You can also use this procedure to upgrade your RCF version.

   Available RCF configurations

   The following table describes the RCFs available for different configurations. Choose the RCF applicable to your configuration.

   For specific port and VLAN usage details, refer to the banner and important notes section in your RCF.

RCF name	Description
2-Cluster-HA-Breakout	Supports two ONTAP clusters with at least eight nodes, including nodes that use shared Cluster+HA ports.
4-Cluster-HA-Breakout	Supports four ONTAP clusters with at least four nodes, including nodes that use shared Cluster+HA ports.
1-Cluster-HA	All ports are configured for 40/100GbE. Supports shared cluster/HA traffic on ports. Required for AFF A320, AFF A250, and FAS500f systems. Additionally, all ports can be used as dedicated cluster ports.
1-Cluster-HA-Breakout	Ports are configured for 4x10GbE breakout, 4x25GbE breakout (RCF 1.6+ on 100GbE switches), and 40/100GbE. Supports shared cluster/HA traffic on ports for nodes that use shared cluster/HA ports: AFF A320, AFF A250, and FAS500f systems. Additionally, all ports can be used as dedicated cluster ports.

RCF name	Description
Cluster-HA-Storage	Ports are configured for 40/100GbE for Cluster+HA, 4x10GbE Breakout for Cluster and 4x25GbE Breakout for Cluster+HA, and 100GbE for each Storage HA Pair.
Cluster	Two flavors of RCF with different allocations of 4x10GbE ports (breakout) and 40/100GbE ports. All FAS/AFF nodes are supported, except for AFF A320, AFF A250, and FAS500f systems.
Storage	All ports are configured for 100GbE NVMe storage connections.

Prepare to install NX-OS software and RCF

Before you install the NX-OS software and the Reference Configuration File (RCF), follow this procedure.

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the two Cisco switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The node names are cluster1-01 and cluster1-02.
- The cluster LIF names are cluster1-01_clus1 and cluster1-01_clus2 for cluster1-01 and cluster1-02_clus1 and cluster1-02_clus2 for cluster1-02.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.

About this task

The procedure requires the use of both ONTAP commands and Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches commands; ONTAP commands are used unless otherwise indicated.

Steps

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message: `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=x h`

   where x is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > ⓘ The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt (`*>`) appears.

3. Display how many cluster interconnect interfaces are configured in each node for each cluster interconnect switch:

   `network device-discovery show -protocol cdp`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- -----------------
--------
cluster1-02/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Eth1/2            N9K-
C9336C
             e0b    cs2                       Eth1/2            N9K-
C9336C
cluster1-01/cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Eth1/1            N9K-
C9336C
             e0b    cs2                       Eth1/1            N9K-
C9336C

4 entries were displayed.
```

4. Check the administrative or operational status of each cluster interface.
   a. Display the network port attributes:

```
`network port show –ipspace Cluster`
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: cluster1-02
                                                        Speed(Mbps)
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy

Node: cluster1-01
                                                        Speed(Mbps)
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy

4 entries were displayed.
```

b. Display information about the LIFs:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical            Status     Network
Current       Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- ------------------
------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16
cluster1-01   e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16
cluster1-01   e0b     true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16
cluster1-02   e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16
cluster1-02   e0b     true

4 entries were displayed.
```

5. Ping the remote cluster LIFs:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node cluster1-02
Host is cluster1-02
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster cluster1-01_clus1 169.254.209.69 cluster1-01     e0a
Cluster cluster1-01_clus2 169.254.49.125 cluster1-01     e0b
Cluster cluster1-02_clus1 169.254.47.194 cluster1-02     e0a
Cluster cluster1-02_clus2 169.254.19.183 cluster1-02     e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:

Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)

Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

6. Verify that the auto-revert command is enabled on all cluster LIFs:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-revert
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-
revert

          Logical
Vserver   Interface           Auto-revert
--------- -------------------- ------------
Cluster
          cluster1-01_clus1   true
          cluster1-01_clus2   true
          cluster1-02_clus1   true
          cluster1-02_clus2   true
4 entries were displayed.
```

7. For ONTAP 9.8 and later, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password` and `system switch ethernet log enable-collection`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system  switch ethernet log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

ⓘ If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

8. For ONTAP releases 9.5P16, 9.6P12, and 9.7P10 and later patch releases, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

`system cluster-switch log setup-password` and `system cluster-switch log enable-`

`collection`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

ⓘ If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

What's next?

Install the NX-OS software.

Install the NX-OS software

Follow this procedure to install the NX-OS software on the Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch.

Before you begin, complete the procedure in Prepare to install NX-OS and RCF.

Review requirements

What you'll need

- A current backup of the switch configuration.
- A fully functioning cluster (no errors in the logs or similar issues).
- Cisco Ethernet switch page. Consult the switch compatibility table for the supported ONTAP and NX-OS versions.
- Appropriate software and upgrade guides available on the Cisco web site for the Cisco switch upgrade and downgrade procedures. See Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches.

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the two Cisco switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The node names are cluster1-01, cluster1-02, cluster1-03, and cluster1-04.
- The cluster LIF names are cluster1-01_clus1, cluster1-01_clus2, cluster1-02_clus1, cluster1-02_clus2 , cluster1-03_clus1, cluster1-03_clus2, cluster1-04_clus1, and cluster1-04_clus2.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.

Install the software

The procedure requires the use of both ONTAP commands and Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches commands; ONTAP commands are used unless otherwise indicated.

Steps

1. Connect the cluster switch to the management network.
2. Use the ping command to verify connectivity to the server hosting the NX-OS software and the RCF.

   Show example

   This example verifies that the switch can reach the server at IP address 172.19.2.1:

   ```
   cs2# ping 172.19.2.1
   Pinging 172.19.2.1 with 0 bytes of data:

   Reply From 172.19.2.1: icmp_seq = 0. time= 5910 usec.
   ```

3. Copy the NX-OS software and EPLD images to the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch.

Show example

```
cs2# copy sftp: bootflash: vrf management
Enter source filename: /code/nxos.9.3.5.bin
Enter hostname for the sftp server: 172.19.2.1
Enter username: user1

Outbound-ReKey for 172.19.2.1:22
Inbound-ReKey for 172.19.2.1:22
user1@172.19.2.1's password:
sftp> progress
Progress meter enabled
sftp> get   /code/nxos.9.3.5.bin  /bootflash/nxos.9.3.5.bin
/code/nxos.9.3.5.bin  100% 1261MB   9.3MB/s   02:15
sftp> exit
Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
Copy complete.


cs2# copy sftp: bootflash: vrf management

Enter source filename: /code/n9000-epld.9.3.5.img
Enter hostname for the sftp server: 172.19.2.1
Enter username: user1

Outbound-ReKey for 172.19.2.1:22
Inbound-ReKey for 172.19.2.1:22
user1@172.19.2.1's password:
sftp> progress
Progress meter enabled
sftp> get   /code/n9000-epld.9.3.5.img  /bootflash/n9000-
epld.9.3.5.img
/code/n9000-epld.9.3.5.img  100%  161MB   9.5MB/s   00:16
sftp> exit
Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
Copy complete.
```

4. Verify the running version of the NX-OS software:

```
show version
```

Show example

```
cs2# show version
Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (C) 2002-2020, Cisco and/or its affiliates.
All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under their
own
licenses, such as open source.  This software is provided "as is,"
and unless
otherwise stated, there is no warranty, express or implied,
including but not
limited to warranties of merchantability and fitness for a
particular purpose.
Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or
GNU General Public License (GPL) version 3.0  or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1 or
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.0.
A copy of each such license is available at
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php and
http://opensource.org/licenses/gpl-3.0.html and
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php and
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/library.txt.

Software
  BIOS: version 08.38
  NXOS: version 9.3(4)
  BIOS compile time:  05/29/2020
  NXOS image file is: bootflash:///nxos.9.3.4.bin
  NXOS compile time:  4/28/2020 21:00:00 [04/29/2020 02:28:31]


Hardware
  cisco Nexus9000 C9336C-FX2 Chassis
  Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5-2403 v2 @ 1.80GHz with 8154432 kB of
memory.
  Processor Board ID FOC20291J6K

  Device name: cs2
  bootflash:   53298520 kB
Kernel uptime is 0 day(s), 0 hour(s), 3 minute(s), 42 second(s)
```

```
Last reset at 157524 usecs after Mon Nov  2 18:32:06 2020
  Reason: Reset Requested by CLI command reload
  System version: 9.3(4)
  Service:

plugin
  Core Plugin, Ethernet Plugin

Active Package(s):


cs2#
```

5. Install the NX-OS image.

   Installing the image file causes it to be loaded every time the switch is rebooted.

Show example

```
cs2# install all nxos bootflash:nxos.9.3.5.bin

Installer will perform compatibility check first. Please wait.
Installer is forced disruptive

Verifying image bootflash:/nxos.9.3.5.bin for boot variable "nxos".
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Verifying image type.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Preparing "nxos" version info using image bootflash:/nxos.9.3.5.bin.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Preparing "bios" version info using image bootflash:/nxos.9.3.5.bin.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Performing module support checks.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Notifying services about system upgrade.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS



Compatibility check is done:
Module  bootable       Impact     Install-type  Reason
------  --------  --------------- ------------  ------
  1       yes      disruptive         reset     default upgrade is
not hitless



Images will be upgraded according to following table:

Module   Image    Running-Version(pri:alt                  New-
Version         Upg-Required
------- --------- ----------------------------------------
------------------- ------------
  1      nxos     9.3(4)                                    9.3(5)
yes
  1      bios     v08.37(01/28/2020):v08.23(09/23/2015)
v08.38(05/29/2020)      yes
```

```
Switch will be reloaded for disruptive upgrade.

Do you want to continue with the installation (y/n)? [n] y

Install is in progress, please wait.

Performing runtime checks.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Setting boot variables.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Performing configuration copy.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Module 1: Refreshing compact flash and upgrading
bios/loader/bootrom.
Warning: please do not remove or power off the module at this time.
[####################] 100% -- SUCCESS

Finishing the upgrade, switch will reboot in 10 seconds.
```

6. Verify the new version of NX-OS software after the switch has rebooted:

```
show version
```

Show example

```
cs2# show version

Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS) Software
TAC support: http://www.cisco.com/tac
Copyright (C) 2002-2020, Cisco and/or its affiliates.
All rights reserved.
The copyrights to certain works contained in this software are
owned by other third parties and used and distributed under their
own
licenses, such as open source.  This software is provided "as is,"
and unless
otherwise stated, there is no warranty, express or implied,
including but not
limited to warranties of merchantability and fitness for a
particular purpose.
Certain components of this software are licensed under
the GNU General Public License (GPL) version 2.0 or
GNU General Public License (GPL) version 3.0  or the GNU
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.1 or
Lesser General Public License (LGPL) Version 2.0.
A copy of each such license is available at
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/gpl-2.0.php and
http://opensource.org/licenses/gpl-3.0.html and
http://www.opensource.org/licenses/lgpl-2.1.php and
http://www.gnu.org/licenses/old-licenses/library.txt.

Software
  BIOS: version 05.33
  NXOS: version 9.3(5)
  BIOS compile time:  09/08/2018
  NXOS image file is: bootflash:///nxos.9.3.5.bin
  NXOS compile time:  11/4/2018 21:00:00 [11/05/2018 06:11:06]


Hardware
  cisco Nexus9000 C9336C-FX2 Chassis
  Intel(R) Xeon(R) CPU E5-2403 v2 @ 1.80GHz with 8154432 kB of
memory.
  Processor Board ID FOC20291J6K

  Device name: cs2
  bootflash:   53298520 kB
Kernel uptime is 0 day(s), 0 hour(s), 3 minute(s), 42 second(s)
```

```
Last reset at 277524 usecs after Mon Nov  2 22:45:12 2020
  Reason: Reset due to upgrade
  System version: 9.3(4)
  Service:

plugin
  Core Plugin, Ethernet Plugin

Active Package(s):
```

7. Upgrade the EPLD image and reboot the switch.

Show example

```
cs2# show version module 1 epld

EPLD Device                     Version
---------------------------------------
MI   FPGA                        0x7
IO   FPGA                        0x17
MI   FPGA2                       0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2

cs2# install epld bootflash:n9000-epld.9.3.5.img module 1
Compatibility check:
Module        Type         Upgradable        Impact   Reason
------  ------------------ ----------------- --------- -----
     1         SUP         Yes       disruptive  Module Upgradable

Retrieving EPLD versions.... Please wait.
Images will be upgraded according to following table:
Module  Type   EPLD              Running-Version   New-Version  Upg-
Required
------- ------ ----------------- ----------------- ------------
------------
     1  SUP    MI FPGA           0x07              0x07         No
     1  SUP    IO FPGA           0x17              0x19         Yes
     1  SUP    MI FPGA2          0x02              0x02         No
The above modules require upgrade.
The switch will be reloaded at the end of the upgrade
Do you want to continue (y/n) ?  [n] y

Proceeding to upgrade Modules.

Starting Module 1 EPLD Upgrade

Module 1 : IO FPGA [Programming] : 100.00% (     64 of      64
sectors)
Module 1 EPLD upgrade is successful.
Module   Type  Upgrade-Result
-------- ----- --------------
     1   SUP   Success

EPLDs upgraded.

Module 1 EPLD upgrade is successful.
```

8. After the switch reboot, log in again and verify that the new version of EPLD loaded successfully.

Show example

```
cs2# show version module 1 epld

EPLD Device                     Version
---------------------------------------
MI   FPGA                        0x7
IO   FPGA                        0x19
MI   FPGA2                       0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
GEM  FPGA                        0x2
```

9. Repeat steps 1 to 8 to install the NX-OS software on switch cs1.

What's next?

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF).

Install or upgrade the Reference Configuration File (RCF)

You install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) after setting up the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch for the first time. You upgrade your RCF version when you have an existing version of the RCF file installed on your switch.

Suggested documentation

- Cisco Ethernet Switches (NSS)

  Consult the switch compatibility table for the supported ONTAP and RCF versions on the NetApp Support Site. Note that there can be command dependencies between the command syntax in the RCF and the syntax found in specific versions of NX-OS.

- Cisco Nexus 3000 Series Switches

  Refer to the appropriate software and upgrade guides available on the Cisco web site for complete documentation on the Cisco switch upgrade and downgrade procedures..

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the two Cisco switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The node names are cluster1-01, cluster1-02, cluster1-03, and cluster1-04.
- The cluster LIF names are cluster1-01_clus1, cluster1-01_clus2, cluster1-02_clus1, cluster1-02_clus2 , cluster1-03_clus1, cluster1-03_clus2, cluster1-04_clus1, and cluster1-04_clus2.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.

The examples in this procedure use four nodes. These nodes use two 10GbE cluster interconnect ports e0a and e0b. See the Hardware Universe to verify the correct cluster ports on your platforms.

> The command outputs might vary depending on different releases of ONTAP.

For details of the available RCF configurations, see Software install workflow.

Commands used

The procedure requires the use of both ONTAP commands and Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches commands; ONTAP commands are used unless otherwise indicated.

Option 1: Install RCF file on a new switch

You install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) after setting up the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch for the first time.

Before you begin

Make sure of the following:

- A console connection to the switch. The console connection is optional if you have remote access to the switch.
- Switch cs1 and switch cs2 are powered up and the initial switch setup is complete (the Management IP address and SSH is setup)
- The desired NX-OS version has been installed.
- ISL connections between switches are connected.
- ONTAP node cluster ports are not connected.

Step 1: Install the RCF on the switches

1. Login to switch cs1 using SSH or by using a serial console.
2. Copy the RCF to the bootflash of switch cs1 using one of the following transfer protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, or SCP.

   For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference guides.

   Show example

   This example shows TFTP being used to copy an RCF to the bootflash on switch cs1:

   ```
   cs1# copy tftp: bootflash: vrf management
   Enter source filename: Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt
   Enter hostname for the tftp server: 172.22.201.50
   Trying to connect to tftp server......Connection to Server
   Established.
   TFTP get operation was successful
   Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
   ```

3. Apply the RCF previously downloaded to the bootflash.

   For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference guides.

   Show example

   This example shows the RCF file `Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt` being installed on switch cs1:

   ```
   cs1# copy Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt running-
   config echo-commands
   ```

4. Examine the banner output from the `show banner motd` command. You must read and follow these instructions to ensure the proper configuration and operation of the switch.

Show example

```
cs1# show banner motd

********************************************************************
**********
* NetApp Reference Configuration File (RCF)
*
* Switch   : Nexus N9K-C9336C-FX2
* Filename : Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt
* Date     : 10-23-2020
* Version  : v1.6
*
* Port Usage:
* Ports  1- 3: Breakout mode (4x10G) Intra-Cluster Ports, int
e1/1/1-4, e1/2/1-4
, e1/3/1-4
* Ports  4- 6: Breakout mode (4x25G) Intra-Cluster/HA Ports, int
e1/4/1-4, e1/5/
1-4, e1/6/1-4
* Ports  7-34: 40/100GbE Intra-Cluster/HA Ports, int e1/7-34
* Ports 35-36: Intra-Cluster ISL Ports, int e1/35-36
*
* Dynamic breakout commands:
* 10G: interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 10g-4x
* 25G: interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 25g-4x
*
* Undo breakout commands and return interfaces to 40/100G
configuration in confi
g mode:
* no interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 10g-4x
* no interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 25g-4x
* interface Ethernet <interfaces taken out of breakout mode>
* inherit port-profile 40-100G
* priority-flow-control mode auto
* service-policy input HA
* exit
*
********************************************************************
**********
```

5. Verify that the RCF file is the correct newer version:

`show running-config`

When you check the output to verify you have the correct RCF, make sure that the following information is correct:

- The RCF banner
- The node and port settings
- Customizations

  The output varies according to your site configuration. Check the port settings and refer to the release notes for any changes specific to the RCF that you have installed.

6. After you verify the RCF versions and switch settings are correct, copy the running-config file to the startup-config file.

   `copy running-config startup-config`

   Show example

   ```
   cs1# copy running-config startup-config
   [########################################] 100% Copy complete
   ```

   For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference.

7. Reboot switch cs1.

   ```
   cs1# reload
   ```

   ```
   This command will reboot the system. (y/n)? [n] y
   ```

8. Repeat steps 1 through 7 on switch cs2.
9. Connect the cluster ports of all nodes in the ONTAP cluster to switches cs1 and cs2.

Step 2: Verify the switch connections

1. Verify that the switch ports connected to the cluster ports are **up**.

   `show interface brief`

Show example

```
cs1# show interface brief | grep up
.
.
Eth1/1/1      1       eth  access up      none
10G(D) --
Eth1/1/2      1       eth  access up      none
10G(D) --
Eth1/7        1       eth  trunk  up      none
100G(D) --
Eth1/8        1       eth  trunk  up      none
100G(D) --
.
.
```

2. Verify that the cluster nodes are in their correct cluster VLANs using the following commands:

`show vlan brief`

`show interface trunk`

Show example

```
cs1# show vlan brief

VLAN Name                             Status    Ports
---- -------------------------------- ---------
-------------------------------
1    default                          active    Po1, Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3
                                                Eth1/4, Eth1/5,
Eth1/6, Eth1/7
                                                Eth1/8, Eth1/35,
Eth1/36
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
17   VLAN0017                         active    Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3, Eth1/4
                                                Eth1/5, Eth1/6,
Eth1/7, Eth1/8
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
18   VLAN0018                         active    Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3, Eth1/4
                                                Eth1/5, Eth1/6,
Eth1/7, Eth1/8
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
31   VLAN0031                         active    Eth1/11, Eth1/12,
Eth1/13
                                                Eth1/14, Eth1/15,
Eth1/16
                                                Eth1/17, Eth1/18,
Eth1/19
                                                Eth1/20, Eth1/21,
Eth1/22
32   VLAN0032                         active    Eth1/23, Eth1/24,
Eth1/25
```

```
                                                Eth1/26, Eth1/27,
Eth1/28
                                                Eth1/29, Eth1/30,
Eth1/31
                                                Eth1/32, Eth1/33,
Eth1/34
33   VLAN0033                         active    Eth1/11, Eth1/12,
Eth1/13
                                                Eth1/14, Eth1/15,
Eth1/16
                                                Eth1/17, Eth1/18,
Eth1/19
                                                Eth1/20, Eth1/21,
Eth1/22
34   VLAN0034                         active    Eth1/23, Eth1/24,
Eth1/25
                                                Eth1/26, Eth1/27,
Eth1/28
                                                Eth1/29, Eth1/30,
Eth1/31
                                                Eth1/32, Eth1/33,
Eth1/34

cs1# show interface trunk

-----------------------------------------------------
Port          Native  Status        Port
              Vlan                  Channel
-----------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1        1       trunking      --
Eth1/2        1       trunking      --
Eth1/3        1       trunking      --
Eth1/4        1       trunking      --
Eth1/5        1       trunking      --
Eth1/6        1       trunking      --
Eth1/7        1       trunking      --
Eth1/8        1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/1      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/2      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/3      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/4      1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/1     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/2     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/3     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/4     1       trunking      --
Eth1/11       33      trunking      --
```

```
Eth1/12       33      trunking      --
Eth1/13       33      trunking      --
Eth1/14       33      trunking      --
Eth1/15       33      trunking      --
Eth1/16       33      trunking      --
Eth1/17       33      trunking      --
Eth1/18       33      trunking      --
Eth1/19       33      trunking      --
Eth1/20       33      trunking      --
Eth1/21       33      trunking      --
Eth1/22       33      trunking      --
Eth1/23       34      trunking      --
Eth1/24       34      trunking      --
Eth1/25       34      trunking      --
Eth1/26       34      trunking      --
Eth1/27       34      trunking      --
Eth1/28       34      trunking      --
Eth1/29       34      trunking      --
Eth1/30       34      trunking      --
Eth1/31       34      trunking      --
Eth1/32       34      trunking      --
Eth1/33       34      trunking      --
Eth1/34       34      trunking      --
Eth1/35       1       trnk-bndl     Po1
Eth1/36       1       trnk-bndl     Po1
Po1           1       trunking      --

-------------------------------------------------------
Port          Vlans Allowed on Trunk
-------------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1        1,17-18
Eth1/2        1,17-18
Eth1/3        1,17-18
Eth1/4        1,17-18
Eth1/5        1,17-18
Eth1/6        1,17-18
Eth1/7        1,17-18
Eth1/8        1,17-18
Eth1/9/1      1,17-18
Eth1/9/2      1,17-18
Eth1/9/3      1,17-18
Eth1/9/4      1,17-18
Eth1/10/1     1,17-18
Eth1/10/2     1,17-18
Eth1/10/3     1,17-18
Eth1/10/4     1,17-18
```

```
Eth1/11        31,33
Eth1/12        31,33
Eth1/13        31,33
Eth1/14        31,33
Eth1/15        31,33
Eth1/16        31,33
Eth1/17        31,33
Eth1/18        31,33
Eth1/19        31,33
Eth1/20        31,33
Eth1/21        31,33
Eth1/22        31,33
Eth1/23        32,34
Eth1/24        32,34
Eth1/25        32,34
Eth1/26        32,34
Eth1/27        32,34
Eth1/28        32,34
Eth1/29        32,34
Eth1/30        32,34
Eth1/31        32,34
Eth1/32        32,34
Eth1/33        32,34
Eth1/34        32,34
Eth1/35        1
Eth1/36        1
Po1            1
..
..
..
..
..
```

For specific port and VLAN usage details, refer to the banner and important notes section in your RCF.

3. Verify that the ISL between cs1 and cs2 is functional:

```
show port-channel summary
```

Show example

```
cs1# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)        Eth1/36(P)
cs1#
```

Step 3: Set up your ONTAP cluster

NetApp recommends that you use System Manager to set up new clusters.

System Manager provides a simple and easy workflow for cluster set up and configuration including assigning a node management IP address, initializing the cluster, creating a local tier, configuring protocols and provisioning initial storage.

Go to Configure ONTAP on a new cluster with System Manager for setup instructions.

Option 2: Upgrade existing switches with a new RCF version

You upgrade your RCF version when you have an existing version of the RCF file installed on your operational switches.

Before you begin

Make sure you have the following:

- A current backup of the switch configuration.
- A fully functioning cluster (no errors in the logs or similar issues).
- The current RCF file.
- If you are updating your RCF version, you need a boot configuration in the RCF that reflects the desired boot images.

  If you need to change the boot configuration to reflect the current boot images, you must do so before reapplying the RCF so that the correct version is instantiated on future reboots.

No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all of the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

Before installing a new switch software version and RCFs, you must erase the switch settings and perform basic configuration. You must be connected to the switch using the serial console or have preserved basic configuration information prior to erasing the switch settings.

Step 1: Prepare for the upgrade

1. Display the cluster ports on each node that are connected to the cluster switches:

```
network device-discovery show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
--------
cluster1-01/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/7       N9K-
C9336C
            e0d    cs2                       Ethernet1/7       N9K-
C9336C
cluster1-02/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/8       N9K-
C9336C
            e0d    cs2                       Ethernet1/8       N9K-
C9336C
cluster1-03/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1/1     N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/1/1     N9K-
C9336C
cluster1-04/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1/2     N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/1/2     N9K-
C9336C
cluster1::*>
```

2. Check the administrative and operational status of each cluster port.

   a. Verify that all the cluster ports are **up** with a healthy status:

      ```
      network port show –role cluster
      ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: cluster1-01

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0d       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false

Node: cluster1-02

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0d       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
8 entries were displayed.

Node: cluster1-03

   Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

```
Node: cluster1-04

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
cluster1::*>
```

b. Verify that all the cluster interfaces (LIFs) are on the home port:

`network interface show -role cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network
Current       Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask      Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- -----------------
------------ ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up     169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01  e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up     169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01  e0d     true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up     169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02  e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up     169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02  e0d     true
            cluster1-03_clus1  up/up     169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03  e0a     true
            cluster1-03_clus2  up/up     169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03  e0b     true
            cluster1-04_clus1  up/up     169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04  e0a     true
            cluster1-04_clus2  up/up     169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04  e0b     true
8 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

c. Verify that the cluster displays information for both cluster switches:

`system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled-operational true`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address
Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
-----
cs1                         cluster-network    10.233.205.90
N9K-C9336C
     Serial Number: FOCXXXXXXGD
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                    9.3(5)
    Version Source: CDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.233.205.91
N9K-C9336C
     Serial Number: FOCXXXXXXGS
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                    9.3(5)
    Version Source: CDP
cluster1::*>
```

3. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
false
```

Step 2: Configure ports

1. On cluster switch cs1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes.

```
cs1(config)# interface eth1/1/1-2,eth1/7-8
```

```
cs1(config-if-range)# shutdown
```

2. Verify that the cluster LIFs have failed over to the ports hosted on cluster switch cs1. This might take a few seconds.

```
network interface show -role cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical           Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface         Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ----------------- ---------- ------------------
------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1 up/up      169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01   e0a     true
            cluster1-01_clus2 up/up      169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01   e0a     false
            cluster1-02_clus1 up/up      169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02   e0a     true
            cluster1-02_clus2 up/up      169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02   e0a     false
            cluster1-03_clus1 up/up      169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03   e0a     true
            cluster1-03_clus2 up/up      169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03   e0a     false
            cluster1-04_clus1 up/up      169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04   e0a     true
            cluster1-04_clus2 up/up      169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04   e0a     false
8 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

3. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

`cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  -------
cluster1-01          true    true          false
cluster1-02          true    true          false
cluster1-03          true    true          true
cluster1-04          true    true          false
4 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

4. If you have not already done so, save a copy of the current switch configuration by copying the output of the following command to a text file:

   ```
   show running-config
   ```

   a. Record any custom additions between the current running-config and the RCF file in use (such as an SNMP configuration for your organization).

   b. For NX-OS 10.2 and newer use the `show diff running-config` command to compare with the saved RCF file in the bootflash. Otherwise, use a third part diff/compare tool.

5. Save basic configuration details to the write_erase.cfg file on the bootflash.

   ```
   switch# show run | i "username admin password" > bootflash:write_erase.cfg

   switch# show run | section "vrf context management" >>
   bootflash:write_erase.cfg

   switch# show run | section "interface mgmt0" >> bootflash:write_erase.cfg

   switch# show run | section "switchname" >> bootflash:write_erase.cfg
   ```

6. Issue the write erase command to erase the current saved configuration:

   ```
   switch# write erase

   Warning: This command will erase the startup-configuration.

   Do you wish to proceed anyway? (y/n) [n] y
   ```

7. Copy the previously saved basic configuration into the startup configuration.

   ```
   switch# copy write_erase.cfg startup-config
   ```

8. Perform a reboot of the switch:

   ```
   switch# reload
   ```

```
This command will reboot the system. (y/n)? [n] y
```

9. After the management IP address is reachable again, log in to the switch through SSH.

   You may need to update host file entries related to the SSH keys.

10. Copy the RCF to the bootflash of switch cs1 using one of the following transfer protocols: FTP, TFTP, SFTP, or SCP.

    For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference guides.

    Show example

    This example shows TFTP being used to copy an RCF to the bootflash on switch cs1:

    ```
    cs1# copy tftp: bootflash: vrf management
    Enter source filename: Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt
    Enter hostname for the tftp server: 172.22.201.50
    Trying to connect to tftp server......Connection to Server
    Established.
    TFTP get operation was successful
    Copy complete, now saving to disk (please wait)...
    ```

11. Apply the RCF previously downloaded to the bootflash.

    For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference guides.

    Show example

    This example shows the RCF file `Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt` being installed on switch cs1:

    ```
    cs1# copy Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt running-
    config echo-commands
    ```

12. Examine the banner output from the `show banner motd` command. You must read and follow these instructions to ensure the proper configuration and operation of the switch.

Show example

```
cs1# show banner motd

******************************************************************
**********
* NetApp Reference Configuration File (RCF)
*
* Switch   : Nexus N9K-C9336C-FX2
* Filename : Nexus_9336C_RCF_v1.6-Cluster-HA-Breakout.txt
* Date     : 10-23-2020
* Version  : v1.6
*
* Port Usage:
* Ports  1- 3: Breakout mode (4x10G) Intra-Cluster Ports, int
e1/1/1-4, e1/2/1-4
, e1/3/1-4
* Ports  4- 6: Breakout mode (4x25G) Intra-Cluster/HA Ports, int
e1/4/1-4, e1/5/
1-4, e1/6/1-4
* Ports  7-34: 40/100GbE Intra-Cluster/HA Ports, int e1/7-34
* Ports 35-36: Intra-Cluster ISL Ports, int e1/35-36
*
* Dynamic breakout commands:
* 10G: interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 10g-4x
* 25G: interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 25g-4x
*
* Undo breakout commands and return interfaces to 40/100G
configuration in confi
g mode:
* no interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 10g-4x
* no interface breakout module 1 port <range> map 25g-4x
* interface Ethernet <interfaces taken out of breakout mode>
* inherit port-profile 40-100G
* priority-flow-control mode auto
* service-policy input HA
* exit
*
******************************************************************
**********
```

13. Verify that the RCF file is the correct newer version:

```
show running-config
```

When you check the output to verify you have the correct RCF, make sure that the following information is correct:

- The RCF banner
- The node and port settings
- Customizations

  The output varies according to your site configuration. Check the port settings and refer to the release notes for any changes specific to the RCF that you have installed.

14. Reapply any previously identified custom additions to the switch configuration.
15. After you verify the RCF versions, custom additions, and switch settings are correct, copy the running-config file to the startup-config file.

    For more information on Cisco commands, see the appropriate guide in the Cisco Nexus 9000 Series NX-OS Command Reference guides.

    ```
    cs1# copy running-config startup-config

    [] 100% Copy complete
    ```

16. Reboot switch cs1. You can ignore the “cluster switch health monitor” alerts and “cluster ports down” events reported on the nodes while the switch reboots.

    ```
    cs1# reload

    This command will reboot the system. (y/n)? [n] y
    ```

17. Verify the health of cluster ports on the cluster.
    a. Verify that cluster ports are up and healthy across all nodes in the cluster:

       ```
       network port show -role cluster
       ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: cluster1-01

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: cluster1-02

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: cluster1-03

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0d       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
```

```
Node: cluster1-04

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
e0d       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy false
8 entries were displayed.
```

b. Verify the switch health from the cluster.

```
network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- -----------------
--------
cluster1-01/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/7
N9K-C9336C
            e0d    cs2                       Ethernet1/7
N9K-C9336C
cluster01-2/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/8
N9K-C9336C
            e0d    cs2                       Ethernet1/8
N9K-C9336C
cluster01-3/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1/1
N9K-C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/1/1
N9K-C9336C
cluster1-04/cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1/2
N9K-C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/1/2
N9K-C9336C

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address
Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
-----
cs1                         cluster-network    10.233.205.90
NX9-C9336C
     Serial Number: FOCXXXXXXGD
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                    9.3(5)
    Version Source: CDP

cs2                         cluster-network    10.233.205.91
```

```
NX9-C9336C
      Serial Number: FOCXXXXXXGS
       Is Monitored: true
             Reason: None
   Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                     9.3(5)
     Version Source: CDP

2 entries were displayed.
```

You might observe the following output on the cs1 switch console depending on the RCF version previously loaded on the switch:

```
2020 Nov 17 16:07:18 cs1 %$ VDC-1 %$ %STP-2-UNBLOCK_CONSIST_PORT:
Unblocking port port-channel1 on VLAN0092. Port consistency
restored.
2020 Nov 17 16:07:23 cs1 %$ VDC-1 %$ %STP-2-BLOCK_PVID_PEER:
Blocking port-channel1 on VLAN0001. Inconsistent peer vlan.
2020 Nov 17 16:07:23 cs1 %$ VDC-1 %$ %STP-2-BLOCK_PVID_LOCAL:
Blocking port-channel1 on VLAN0092. Inconsistent local vlan.
```

18. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

    `cluster show`

    Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health   Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- -------- ------------- -------
cluster1-01          true     true          false
cluster1-02          true     true          false
cluster1-03          true     true          true
cluster1-04          true     true          false
4 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

19. Repeat steps 1 to 18 on switch cs2.
20. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
True
```

Step 3: Verify the cluster network configuration and cluster health

1. Verify that the switch ports connected to the cluster ports are **up**.

   `show interface brief`

   Show example

   ```
   cs1# show interface brief | grep up
   .
   .
   Eth1/1/1      1       eth  access up      none
   10G(D) --
   Eth1/1/2      1       eth  access up      none
   10G(D) --
   Eth1/7        1       eth  trunk  up      none
   100G(D) --
   Eth1/8        1       eth  trunk  up      none
   100G(D) --
   .
   .
   ```

2. Verify that the expected nodes are still connected:

   `show cdp neighbors`

Show example

```
cs1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID           Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1               Eth1/1         133    H           FAS2980
e0a
node2               Eth1/2         133    H           FAS2980
e0a
cs1                 Eth1/35        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs1                 Eth1/36        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4
```

3. Verify that the cluster nodes are in their correct cluster VLANs using the following commands:

```
show vlan brief
```

```
show interface trunk
```

Show example

```
cs1# show vlan brief

VLAN Name                             Status    Ports
---- -------------------------------- ---------
-------------------------------
1    default                          active    Po1, Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3
                                                Eth1/4, Eth1/5,
Eth1/6, Eth1/7
                                                Eth1/8, Eth1/35,
Eth1/36
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
17   VLAN0017                         active    Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3, Eth1/4
                                                Eth1/5, Eth1/6,
Eth1/7, Eth1/8
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
18   VLAN0018                         active    Eth1/1, Eth1/2,
Eth1/3, Eth1/4
                                                Eth1/5, Eth1/6,
Eth1/7, Eth1/8
                                                Eth1/9/1, Eth1/9/2,
Eth1/9/3
                                                Eth1/9/4, Eth1/10/1,
Eth1/10/2
                                                Eth1/10/3, Eth1/10/4
31   VLAN0031                         active    Eth1/11, Eth1/12,
Eth1/13
                                                Eth1/14, Eth1/15,
Eth1/16
                                                Eth1/17, Eth1/18,
Eth1/19
                                                Eth1/20, Eth1/21,
Eth1/22
32   VLAN0032                         active    Eth1/23, Eth1/24,
Eth1/25
```

```
                                                Eth1/26, Eth1/27,
Eth1/28
                                                Eth1/29, Eth1/30,
Eth1/31
                                                Eth1/32, Eth1/33,
Eth1/34
33   VLAN0033                         active    Eth1/11, Eth1/12,
Eth1/13
                                                Eth1/14, Eth1/15,
Eth1/16
                                                Eth1/17, Eth1/18,
Eth1/19
                                                Eth1/20, Eth1/21,
Eth1/22
34   VLAN0034                         active    Eth1/23, Eth1/24,
Eth1/25
                                                Eth1/26, Eth1/27,
Eth1/28
                                                Eth1/29, Eth1/30,
Eth1/31
                                                Eth1/32, Eth1/33,
Eth1/34

cs1# show interface trunk

-----------------------------------------------------
Port          Native  Status        Port
              Vlan                  Channel
-----------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1        1       trunking      --
Eth1/2        1       trunking      --
Eth1/3        1       trunking      --
Eth1/4        1       trunking      --
Eth1/5        1       trunking      --
Eth1/6        1       trunking      --
Eth1/7        1       trunking      --
Eth1/8        1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/1      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/2      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/3      1       trunking      --
Eth1/9/4      1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/1     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/2     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/3     1       trunking      --
Eth1/10/4     1       trunking      --
Eth1/11       33      trunking      --
```

```
Eth1/12        33      trunking      --
Eth1/13        33      trunking      --
Eth1/14        33      trunking      --
Eth1/15        33      trunking      --
Eth1/16        33      trunking      --
Eth1/17        33      trunking      --
Eth1/18        33      trunking      --
Eth1/19        33      trunking      --
Eth1/20        33      trunking      --
Eth1/21        33      trunking      --
Eth1/22        33      trunking      --
Eth1/23        34      trunking      --
Eth1/24        34      trunking      --
Eth1/25        34      trunking      --
Eth1/26        34      trunking      --
Eth1/27        34      trunking      --
Eth1/28        34      trunking      --
Eth1/29        34      trunking      --
Eth1/30        34      trunking      --
Eth1/31        34      trunking      --
Eth1/32        34      trunking      --
Eth1/33        34      trunking      --
Eth1/34        34      trunking      --
Eth1/35        1       trnk-bndl     Po1
Eth1/36        1       trnk-bndl     Po1
Po1            1       trunking      --

-----------------------------------------------------
Port           Vlans Allowed on Trunk
-----------------------------------------------------
Eth1/1         1,17-18
Eth1/2         1,17-18
Eth1/3         1,17-18
Eth1/4         1,17-18
Eth1/5         1,17-18
Eth1/6         1,17-18
Eth1/7         1,17-18
Eth1/8         1,17-18
Eth1/9/1       1,17-18
Eth1/9/2       1,17-18
Eth1/9/3       1,17-18
Eth1/9/4       1,17-18
Eth1/10/1      1,17-18
Eth1/10/2      1,17-18
Eth1/10/3      1,17-18
Eth1/10/4      1,17-18
```

```
Eth1/11        31,33
Eth1/12        31,33
Eth1/13        31,33
Eth1/14        31,33
Eth1/15        31,33
Eth1/16        31,33
Eth1/17        31,33
Eth1/18        31,33
Eth1/19        31,33
Eth1/20        31,33
Eth1/21        31,33
Eth1/22        31,33
Eth1/23        32,34
Eth1/24        32,34
Eth1/25        32,34
Eth1/26        32,34
Eth1/27        32,34
Eth1/28        32,34
Eth1/29        32,34
Eth1/30        32,34
Eth1/31        32,34
Eth1/32        32,34
Eth1/33        32,34
Eth1/34        32,34
Eth1/35        1
Eth1/36        1
Po1            1
..
..
..
..
..
```

For specific port and VLAN usage details, refer to the banner and important notes section in your RCF.

4. Verify that the ISL between cs1 and cs2 is functional:

```
show port-channel summary
```

Show example

```
cs1# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)        Eth1/36(P)
cs1#
```

5. Verify that the cluster LIFs have reverted to their home port:

```
network interface show -role cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -role cluster
            Logical            Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface          Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------------ ---------- ------------------
------------------- ------- ----
Cluster
            cluster1-01_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.4/23
cluster1-01         e0d     true
            cluster1-01_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.5/23
cluster1-01         e0d     true
            cluster1-02_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.8/23
cluster1-02         e0d     true
            cluster1-02_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.9/23
cluster1-02         e0d     true
            cluster1-03_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.3/23
cluster1-03         e0b     true
            cluster1-03_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.1/23
cluster1-03         e0b     true
            cluster1-04_clus1  up/up      169.254.1.6/23
cluster1-04         e0b     true
            cluster1-04_clus2  up/up      169.254.1.7/23
cluster1-04         e0b     true
8 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

If any cluster LIFs have not returned to their home ports, revert them manually from the local node:

`network interface revert -vserver vserver_name -lif lif_name`

6. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

   `cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------- -------
cluster1-01          true    true          false
cluster1-02          true    true          false
cluster1-03          true    true          true
cluster1-04          true    true          false
4 entries were displayed.
cluster1::*>
```

7. Ping the remote cluster interfaces to verify connectivity:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node local
Host is cluster1-03
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster cluster1-03_clus1 169.254.1.3 cluster1-03 e0a
Cluster cluster1-03_clus2 169.254.1.1 cluster1-03 e0b
Cluster cluster1-04_clus1 169.254.1.6 cluster1-04 e0a
Cluster cluster1-04_clus2 169.254.1.7 cluster1-04 e0b
Cluster cluster1-01_clus1 169.254.3.4 cluster1-01 e0a
Cluster cluster1-01_clus2 169.254.3.5 cluster1-01 e0d
Cluster cluster1-02_clus1 169.254.3.8 cluster1-02 e0a
Cluster cluster1-02_clus2 169.254.3.9 cluster1-02 e0d
Local = 169.254.1.3 169.254.1.1
Remote = 169.254.1.6 169.254.1.7 169.254.3.4 169.254.3.5 169.254.3.8
169.254.3.9
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
............
Basic connectivity succeeds on 12 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................................................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 12 path(s):
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.1.6
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.1.7
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.4
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.5
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.8
    Local 169.254.1.3 to Remote 169.254.3.9
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.1.6
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.1.7
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.4
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.5
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.8
    Local 169.254.1.1 to Remote 169.254.3.9
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 12 path(s)
RPC status:
6 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
6 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

Enable SSH on Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switches

If you are using the Cluster Switch Health Monitor (CSHM) and log collection features, you must generate the SSH keys and then enable SSH on the cluster switches.

Steps

1. Verify that SSH is disabled:

   ```
   show ip ssh
   ```

   Show example

   ```
   (switch)# show ip ssh

   SSH Configuration

   Administrative Mode: .......................... Disabled
   SSH Port: ..................................... 22
   Protocol Level: ............................... Version 2
   SSH Sessions Currently Active: ................ 0
   Max SSH Sessions Allowed: ..................... 5
   SSH Timeout (mins): ........................... 5
   Keys Present: ................................. DSA(1024) RSA(1024)
   ECDSA(521)
   Key Generation In Progress: ................... None
   SSH Public Key Authentication Mode: ........... Disabled
   SCP server Administrative Mode: ............... Disabled
   ```

2. Generate the SSH keys:

   ```
   crypto key generate
   ```

Show example

```
(switch)# config

(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate rsa

Do you want to overwrite the existing RSA keys? (y/n): y


(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate dsa

Do you want to overwrite the existing DSA keys? (y/n): y


(switch) (Config)# crypto key generate ecdsa 521

Do you want to overwrite the existing ECDSA keys? (y/n): y

(switch) (Config)# aaa authorization commands "noCmdAuthList" none
(switch) (Config)# exit
(switch)# ip ssh server enable
(switch)# ip scp server enable
(switch)# ip ssh pubkey-auth
(switch)# write mem

This operation may take a few minutes.
Management interfaces will not be available during this time.
Are you sure you want to save? (y/n) y

Config file 'startup-config' created successfully.

Configuration Saved!
```

3. Reboot the switch:

   `reload`

4. Verify that SSH is enabled:

   `show ip ssh`

Show example

```
(switch)# show ip ssh

SSH Configuration

Administrative Mode: .......................... Enabled
SSH Port: ..................................... 22
Protocol Level: ............................... Version 2
SSH Sessions Currently Active: ................ 0
Max SSH Sessions Allowed: ..................... 5
SSH Timeout (mins): ........................... 5
Keys Present: ................................. DSA(1024) RSA(1024)
ECDSA(521)
Key Generation In Progress: ................... None
SSH Public Key Authentication Mode: ........... Enabled
SCP server Administrative Mode: ............... Enabled
```

What's next?

Enable log collection.

Ethernet Switch Health Monitoring log collection

You can use the log collection feature to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.
The Ethernet switch health monitor (CSHM) is responsible for ensuring the operational health of Cluster and Storage network switches and collecting switch logs for debugging purposes. This procedure guides you through the process of setting up and starting the collection of detailed **Support** logs from the switch and starts an hourly collection of **Periodic** data that is collected by AutoSupport.

Before you begin

- Verify that you have set up your environment using the 9336C-FX2 cluster switch **CLI**.
- Switch health monitoring must be enabled for the switch. Verify this by ensuring the `Is Monitored:` field is set to **true** in the output of the `system switch ethernet show` command.

Steps

1. Create a password for the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature:

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

2. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

> If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

Troubleshooting

If you encounter any of the following error statuses reported by the log collection feature (visible in the output of `system switch ethernet log show`), try the corresponding debug steps:

Log collection error status	Resolution
RSA keys not present	Regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Contact NetApp support.
switch password error	Verify credentials, test SSH connectivity, and regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Review the switch documentation or contact NetApp support for instructions.
ECDSA keys not present for FIPS	If FIPS mode is enabled, ECDSA keys need to be generated on the switch before retrying.
pre-existing log found	Remove the previous log collection file on the switch.

switch dump log error	Ensure the switch user has log collection permissions. Refer to the prerequisites above.

Configure SNMPv3

Follow this procedure to configure SNMPv3, which supports Ethernet switch health monitoring (CSHM).

About this task

The following commands configure an SNMPv3 username on Cisco 9336C-FX2 switches:

- For **no authentication**:
  `snmp-server user SNMPv3_USER NoAuth`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication**:
  `snmp-server user SNMPv3_USER auth [md5|sha] AUTH-PASSWORD`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication with AES/DES encryption**:
  `snmp-server user SNMPv3_USER AuthEncrypt auth [md5|sha] AUTH-PASSWORD priv aes-128 PRIV-PASSWORD`

The following command configures an SNMPv3 username on the ONTAP side:
`cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name SNMPv3_USER -application snmp -authentication-method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress ADDRESS`

The following command establishes the SNMPv3 username with CSHM:
`cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device DEVICE -snmp-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username SNMPv3_USER`

Steps

1. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the switch to use authentication and encryption:

   ```
   show snmp user
   ```

Show example

```
(sw1)(Config)# snmp-server user SNMPv3User auth md5 <auth_password>
priv aes-128 <priv_password>

(sw1)(Config)# show snmp user

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
---------
                              SNMP USERS
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
---------

User              Auth            Priv(enforce)   Groups
acl_filter
----------------- --------------- --------------- ---------------
-----------
admin             md5             des(no)         network-admin
SNMPv3User        md5             aes-128(no)     network-operator

-------------------------------------------------------------------------
---------
     NOTIFICATION TARGET USERS (configured  for sending V3 Inform)
-------------------------------------------------------------------------
---------

User              Auth               Priv
----------------- ------------------ ------------

(sw1)(Config)#
```

2. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the ONTAP side:

```
security login create -user-or-group-name <username> -application snmp
-authentication-method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress 10.231.80.212
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device "sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -is-monitoring-enabled-admin true

cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name <username>
-application snmp -authentication-method usm -remote-switch
-ipaddress 10.231.80.212

Enter the authoritative entity's EngineID [remote EngineID]:

Which authentication protocol do you want to choose (none, md5, sha,
sha2-256)
[none]: md5

Enter the authentication protocol password (minimum 8 characters
long):

Enter the authentication protocol password again:

Which privacy protocol do you want to choose (none, des, aes128)
[none]: aes128

Enter privacy protocol password (minimum 8 characters long):
Enter privacy protocol password again:
```

3. Configure CSHM to monitor with the new SNMPv3 user:

```
system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1" -instance
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1" -instance

                                   Device Name: sw1
                                    IP Address: 10.231.80.212
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv2c
                                 Is Discovered: true
   SNMPv2c Community String or SNMPv3 Username: cshm1!
                                  Model Number: N9K-C9336C-FX2
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: Cisco Nexus
Operating System (NX-OS) Software, Version 9.3(7)
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None  <---- displays
when SNMP settings are valid
                      Source Of Switch Version: CDP/ISDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: QTFCU3826001C
                                   RCF Version: v1.8X2 for
Cluster/HA/RDMA

cluster1::*>
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device "sw1" -snmp
-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username <username>
cluster1::*>
```

4. Verify that the serial number to be queried with the newly created SNMPv3 user is the same as detailed in the previous step after the CSHM polling period has completed.

```
system switch ethernet polling-interval show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet polling-interval show
         Polling Interval (in minutes): 5

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1" -instance

                                   Device Name: sw1
                                    IP Address: 10.231.80.212
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv3
                                 Is Discovered: true
   SNMPv2c Community String or SNMPv3 Username: SNMPv3User
                                  Model Number: N9K-C9336C-FX2
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: Cisco Nexus
Operating System (NX-OS) Software, Version 9.3(7)
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None  <---- displays
when SNMP settings are valid
                      Source Of Switch Version: CDP/ISDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: QTFCU3826001C
                                   RCF Version: v1.8X2 for
Cluster/HA/RDMA

cluster1::*>
```

Migrate switches

Migrate from a NetApp CN1610 cluster switch to a Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switch

You can migrate NetApp CN1610 cluster switches for an ONTAP cluster to Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switches. This is a nondisruptive procedure.

Review requirements

You must be aware of certain configuration information, port connections and cabling requirements when you are replacing NetApp CN1610 cluster switches with Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switches.

Supported switches

The following cluster switches are supported:

- NetApp CN1610
- Cisco 9336C-FX2

For details of supported ports and their configurations, see the Hardware Universe.

What you'll need

Verify that your configuration meets the following requirements:

- The existing cluster is correctly set up and functioning.
- All cluster ports are in the **up** state to ensure nondisruptive operations.
- The Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switches are configured and operating under the correct version of NX-OS installed with the reference configuration file (RCF) applied.
- The existing cluster network configuration has the following:
  - A redundant and fully functional NetApp cluster using NetApp CN1610 switches.
  - Management connectivity and console access to both the NetApp CN1610 switches and the new switches.
  - All cluster LIFs in the up state with the cluster LIFs are on their home ports.
- Some of the ports are configured on Cisco 9336C-FX2 switches to run at 40GbE or 100GbE.
- You have planned, migrated, and documented 40GbE and 100GbE connectivity from nodes to Cisco 9336C-FX2 cluster switches.

Migrate the switches

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The existing CN1610 cluster switches are *C1* and *C2*.
- The new 9336C-FX2 cluster switches are *cs1* and *cs2*.
- The nodes are *node1* and *node2*.
- The cluster LIFs are *node1_clus1* and *node1_clus2* on node 1, and *node2_clus1* and *node2_clus2* on node 2 respectively.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports used in this procedure are *e3a* and *e3b*.

About this task

This procedure covers the following scenario:

- Switch C2 is replaced by switch cs2 first.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - The cabling between the nodes and C2 is then disconnected from C2 and reconnected to cs2.
- Switch C1 is replaced by switch cs1.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - The cabling between the nodes and C1 is then disconnected from C1 and reconnected to cs1.

> ⓘ No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all of the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
   ```

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

   The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

3. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

   ```
   network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false
   ```

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Determine the administrative or operational status for each cluster interface.

   Each port should display up for `Link` and `healthy` for `Health Status`.

   a. Display the network port attributes:

      ```
      network port show -ipspace Cluster
      ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

b. Display information about the LIFs and their designated home nodes:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Each LIF should display `up/up` for `Status Admin/Oper` and `true` for `Is Home`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

             Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver      Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- -----------  ---------- ------------------
----------- ------- ----
Cluster
             node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
             node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
             node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
             node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

2. The cluster ports on each node are connected to existing cluster switches in the following way (from the nodes' perspective) using the command:

   `network device-discovery show -protocol`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /cdp
            e3a    C1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    0/1               -
            e3b    C2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    0/1               -
node2      /cdp
            e3a    C1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    0/2               -
            e3b    C2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    0/2               -
```

3. The cluster ports and switches are connected in the following way (from the switches' perspective) using the command:

   `show cdp neighbors`

Show example

```
C1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 Eth1/1        124    H           AFF-A400
e3a
node2                 Eth1/2        124    H           AFF-A400
e3a
C2                    0/13          179    S I s       CN1610
0/13
C2                    0/14          175    S I s       CN1610
0/14
C2                    0/15          179    S I s       CN1610
0/15
C2                    0/16          175    S I s       CN1610
0/16

C2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute


Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 Eth1/1        124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
node2                 Eth1/2        124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
C1                    0/13          175    S I s       CN1610
0/13
C1                    0/14          175    S I s       CN1610
0/14
C1                    0/15          175    S I s       CN1610
0/15
C1                    0/16          175    S I s       CN1610
0/16
```

4. Verify that the cluster network has full connectivity using the command:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2

Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1     e3a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1     e3b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2     e3a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2     e3b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

5. On switch C2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(C2)# configure
(C2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/12
(C2)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# shutdown
(C2)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# exit
(C2)(Config)# exit
```

6. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch C2 to the new switch cs2, using appropriate cabling supported by Cisco 9336C-FX2.
7. Display the network port attributes:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                 Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                 Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

8. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

```
network device-discovery show -protocol
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1       /cdp
             e3a    C1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   0/1
CN1610
             e3b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   Ethernet1/1/1     N9K-
C9336C-FX2
node2       /cdp
             e3a    C1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   0/2
CN1610
             e3b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   Ethernet1/1/2     N9K-
C9336C-FX2
```

9. On switch cs2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
             Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver      Interfac     Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -----------
------- ----
Cluster
             node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.4/16     node1
e0b     false
             node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.5/16     node1
e0b     true
             node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.8/16     node2
e0b     false
             node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.9/16     node2
e0b     true
```

10. On switch C1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(C1)# configure
(C1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/12
(C1)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# shutdown
(C1)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# exit
(C1)(Config)# exit
```

11. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch C1 to the new switch cs1, using appropriate cabling supported by Cisco 9336C-FX2.
12. Verify the final configuration of the cluster:

    `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

    Each port should display `up` for `Link` and `healthy` for `Health Status`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

13. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

    `network device-discovery show -protocol`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------------
----------------
node1      /cdp
             e3a    cs1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e3b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
node2      /cdp
             e3a    cs1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e3b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
```

14. On switches cs1 and cs2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

15. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

    `network device-discovery show -protocol`

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------------
--------------
node1      /cdp
             e0a    cs1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e0b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2

node2      /cdp
             e0a    cs1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e0b    cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
```

Step 3: Complete the procedure

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
true
```

2. Verify that all cluster network LIFs are back on their home ports:

```
network interface show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

3. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

4. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
cluster1::*>
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection was successful using the command:

`system switch ethernet log show`

> If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

5. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   `set -privilege admin`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

Migrate from an older Cisco switch to a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch

You can perform a nondisruptive migration from an older Cisco cluster switch to a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster network switch.

Review requirements

Ensure that:

- Some of the ports on Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches are configured to run at 10GbE or 40GbE.
- The 10GbE and 40GbE connectivity from nodes to Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches have been planned, migrated, and documented.
- The cluster is fully functioning (there should be no errors in the logs or similar issues).

- Initial customization of the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches is complete, so that:
  - 9336C-FX2 switches are running the latest recommended version of software.
  - Reference Configuration Files (RCFs) have been applied to the switches.
  - Any site customization, such as DNS, NTP, SMTP, SNMP, and SSH, are configured on the new switches.
- You have access to the switch compatibility table on the Cisco Ethernet Switches page for the supported ONTAP, NX-OS, and RCF versions.
- You have reviewed the appropriate software and upgrade guides available on the Cisco web site for the Cisco switch upgrade and downgrade procedures at Cisco Nexus 9000 Series Switches Support page.

> If you are changing the port speed of the e0a and e1a cluster ports on AFF A800 or AFF C800 systems, you might observe malformed packets being received after the speed conversion. See Bug 1570339 and the Knowledge Base article CRC errors on T6 ports after converting from 40GbE to 100GbE for guidance.

Migrate the switches

About the examples

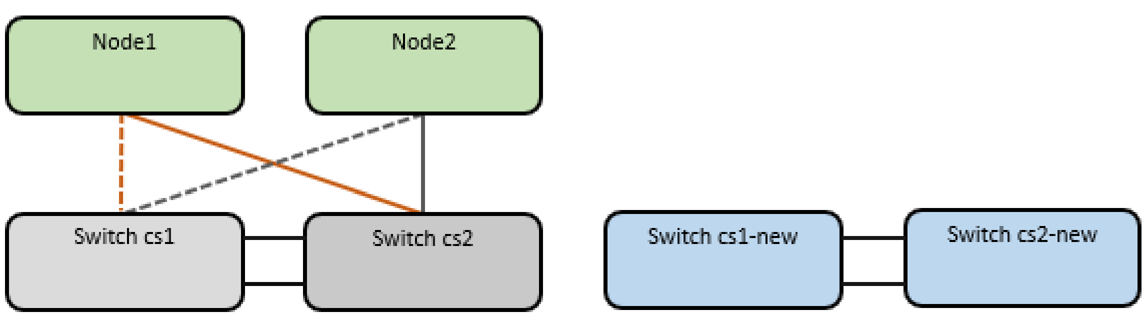
The examples in this procedure use two nodes. These nodes use two 10GbE cluster interconnect ports e0a and e0b. See the Hardware Universe to verify the correct cluster ports on your platforms.

> The command outputs might vary depending on the different releases of ONTAP.

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the existing two Cisco switches are **cs1** and **cs2**
- The new Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches are **cs1-new** and **cs2-new**.
- The node names are **node1** and **node2**.
- The cluster LIF names are **node1_clus1** and **node1_clus2** for node 1, and **node2_clus1** and **node2_clus2** for node 2.
- The **cluster1::>*** prompt indicates the name of the cluster.

During this procedure, refer to the following example:



About this task

The procedure requires the use of both ONTAP commands and Nexus 9000 Series Switches commands;

ONTAP commands are used, unless otherwise indicated.

This procedure covers the following scenario:

- Switch cs2 is replaced by switch cs2-new first.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - Cabling between the nodes and cs2 are then disconnected from cs2 and reconnected to cs2-new.
- Switch cs1 is replaced by switch cs1-new.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - Cabling between the nodes and cs1 are then disconnected from cs1 and reconnected to cs1-new.

> No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all of the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message: `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh`

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

   The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. On the new switches, confirm that the ISL is cabled and healthy between the switches cs1-new and cs2-new:

   ```
   show port-channel summary
   ```

Show example

```
cs1-new# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)

cs2-new# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)
```

2. Display the cluster ports on each node that are connected to the existing cluster switches:

`network device-discovery show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1        N5K-
C5596UP
             e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/2        N5K-
C5596UP
node2      /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1        N5K-
C5596UP
             e0b    cs2                       Ethernet1/2        N5K-
C5596UP
```

3. Determine the administrative or operational status for each cluster port.
   a. Verify that all the cluster ports are up with a healthy status:

      `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

b. Verify that all the cluster interfaces (LIFs) are on their home ports:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- -----------  ---------- ------------------
----------- ------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true
```

c. Verify that the cluster displays information for both cluster switches:

`system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled-operational true`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address
Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
---------------
cs1                         cluster-network    10.233.205.92
N5K-C5596UP
      Serial Number: FOXXXXXXXGS
       Is Monitored: true
             Reason: None
   Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                     9.3(4)
     Version Source: CDP

cs2                         cluster-network     10.233.205.93
N5K-C5596UP
      Serial Number: FOXXXXXXXGD
       Is Monitored: true
             Reason: None
   Software Version: Cisco Nexus Operating System (NX-OS)
Software, Version
                     9.3(4)
     Version Source: CDP
```

4. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

   > ⓘ Disabling auto-revert ensures ONTAP only fails over the cluster LIFs when the switch ports are shutdown later.

5. On cluster switch cs2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of **all** the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs:

```
cs2(config)# interface eth1/1-1/2
cs2(config-if-range)# shutdown
```

6. Verify that the cluster LIFs have failed over to the ports hosted on cluster switch cs1. This might take a few seconds.

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical       Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface     Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------- ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1   up/up      169.254.3.4/16     node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2   up/up      169.254.3.5/16     node1
e0a     false
            node2_clus1   up/up      169.254.3.8/16     node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2   up/up      169.254.3.9/16     node2
e0a     false
```

7. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

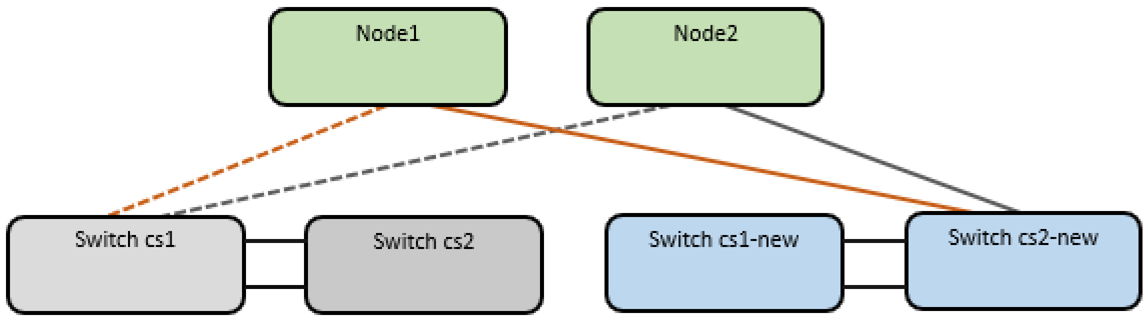
`cluster show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node       Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
---------- ------- ------------- -------
node1      true    true          false
node2      true    true          false
```

8. Move all cluster node connection cables from the old cs2 switch to the new cs2-new switch.

Cluster node connection cables moved to the cs2-new switch



9. Confirm the health of the network connections moved to cs2-new:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

All cluster ports that were moved should be up.

10. Check neighbor information on the cluster ports:

```
network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface      Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- -------------
--------------
node1      /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/1    N5K-
C5596UP
             e0b    cs2-new                   Ethernet1/1/1  N9K-
C9336C-FX2

node2      /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       Ethernet1/2    N5K-
C5596UP
             e0b    cs2-new                   Ethernet1/1/2  N9K-
C9336C-FX2
```

Verify that the moved cluster ports see the cs2-new switch as the neighbor.

11. Confirm the switch port connections from switch cs2-new's perspective:

```
cs2-new# show interface brief
cs2-new# show cdp neighbors
```

12. On cluster switch cs1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of **all** the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
cs1(config)# interface eth1/1-1/2
cs1(config-if-range)# shutdown
```

All cluster LIFs fail over to the cs2-new switch.

13. Verify that the cluster LIFs have failed over to the ports hosted on switch cs2-new. This might take a few seconds:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interfac     Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -----------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.4/16     node1
e0b     false
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.5/16     node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.3.8/16     node2
e0b     false
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.3.9/16     node2
e0b     true
```

14. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

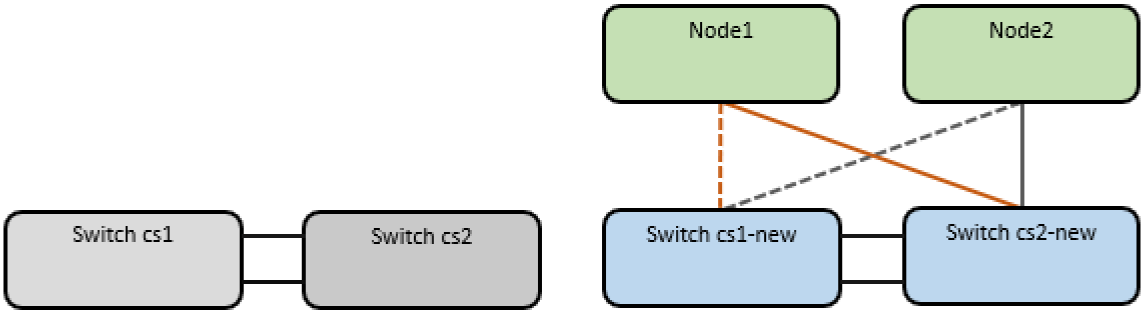
    `cluster show`

    Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster show
Node        Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
---------- ------- ------------- -------
node1       true    true          false
node2       true    true          false
```

15. Move the cluster node connection cables from cs1 to the new cs1-new switch.

    Cluster node connection cables moved to the cs1-new switch



16. Confirm the health of the network connections moved to cs1-new:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

All cluster ports that were moved should be up.

17. Check neighbor information on the cluster ports:

```
network device-discovery show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------------
--------------
node1      /cdp
             e0a    cs1-new                   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e0b    cs2-new                   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2

node2      /cdp
             e0a    cs1-new                   Ethernet1/1/1   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
             e0b    cs2-new                   Ethernet1/1/2   N9K-
C9336C-FX2
```

Verify that the moved cluster ports see the cs1-new switch as the neighbor.

18. Confirm the switch port connections from switch cs1-new's perspective:

```
cs1-new# show interface brief
cs1-new# show cdp neighbors
```

19. Verify that the ISL between cs1-new and cs2-new is still operational:

```
show port-channel summary
```

Show example

```
cs1-new# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)

cs2-new# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs.

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true`

2. Verify that the cluster LIFs have reverted to their home ports (this might take a minute):

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

If the cluster LIFs have not reverted to their home port, manually revert them:

```
network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *
```

3. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

```
cluster show
```

4. Verify the connectivity of the remote cluster interfaces:

ONTAP 9.9.1 and later

You can use the `network interface check cluster-connectivity` command to start an accessibility check for cluster connectivity and then display the details:

`network interface check cluster-connectivity start` and `network interface check cluster-connectivity show`

```
cluster1::*> network interface check cluster-connectivity start
```

NOTE: Wait for a number of seconds before running the show command to display the details.

```
cluster1::*> network interface check cluster-connectivity show
                                  Source           Destination
Packet
Node   Date                       LIF              LIF
Loss
------ -------------------------- --------------- -----------------
-----------
node1
       3/5/2022 19:21:18 -06:00   node1_clus2      node2_clus1
none
       3/5/2022 19:21:20 -06:00   node1_clus2      node2_clus2
none

node2
       3/5/2022 19:21:18 -06:00   node2_clus2      node1_clus1
none
       3/5/2022 19:21:20 -06:00   node2_clus2      node1_clus2
none
```

All ONTAP releases

For all ONTAP releases, you can also use the `cluster ping-cluster -node <name>` command to check the connectivity:

`cluster ping-cluster -node <name>`

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2
Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1     e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1     e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2     e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2     e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

5. Enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files.

ONTAP 9.8 and later

Enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the following two commands: `system switch ethernet log setup-password` and `system switch ethernet log enable-collection`

NOTE: You will need the password for the **admin** user on the switches.

Enter: `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1-new
cs2-new

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1-new
RSA key fingerprint is e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <password of switch's admin user>
Enter the password again: <password of switch's admin user>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2-new
RSA key fingerprint is 57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <password of switch's admin user>
Enter the password again: <password of switch's admin user>
```

Followed by: `system switch ethernet log enable-collection`

```
cluster1::*> system  switch ethernet log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

NOTE: If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

ONTAP releases 9.5P16, 9.6P12, and 9.7P10 and later patch releases

Enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands: `system cluster-switch log setup-password` and `system cluster-switch log enable-collection`

NOTE: You will need the password for the **admin** user on the switches.

Enter: `system cluster-switch log setup-password`

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1-new
cs2-new

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1-new
RSA key fingerprint is e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <password of switch's admin user>
Enter the password again: <password of switch's admin user>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2-new
RSA key fingerprint is 57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <password of switch's admin user>
Enter the password again: <password of switch's admin user>
```

Followed by: `system cluster-switch log enable-collection`

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

NOTE: If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message: `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

Migrate to two-node switched cluster

If you have an existing two-node *switchless* cluster environment, you can migrate to a two-node *switched* cluster environment using Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches.

The migration process works for all nodes using optical or Twinax ports, but is not supported on this switch if nodes are using onboard 10Gb BASE-T RJ45 ports for the cluster-network ports.

Review requirements

What you'll need

- For the two-node switchless configuration:
  - The two-node switchless configuration is properly set up and functioning.
  - All cluster ports are in the **up** state.
  - All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are in the **up** state and on their home ports.
  - See Hardware Universe for all supported ONTAP versions.
- For the Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch configuration:
  - Both switches have management network connectivity.
  - There is console access to the cluster switches.
  - Nexus 9336C-FX2 node-to-node switch and switch-to-switch connections use Twinax or fiber cables.

    See Hardware Universe for more information about cabling.
- Inter-Switch Link (ISL) cables are connected to ports 1/35 and 1/36 on both 9336C-FX2 switches.
- Initial customization of both the 9336C-FX2 switches are completed, so that:
  - 9336C-FX2 switches are running the latest version of software.
  - Reference Configuration Files (RCFs) are applied to the switches.

Any site customization, such as SMTP, SNMP, and SSH, is configured on the new switches.

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following cluster switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the 9336C-FX2 switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The names of the cluster SVMs are node1 and node2.
- The names of the LIFs are node1_clus1 and node1_clus2 on node 1, and node2_clus1 and node2_clus2 on node 2 respectively.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports used in this procedure are e0a and e0b.

See Hardware Universe for information about the cluster ports for your platforms.

Migrate the switches

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
   ```

   where x is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering `y` when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

   The advanced prompt (`*>`) appears.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Disable all node-facing ports (not ISL ports) on both the new cluster switches cs1 and cs2.

   Do not disable the ISL ports.

Show example

The following example shows that node-facing ports 1 through 34 are disabled on switch cs1:

```
cs1# config
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
cs1(config)# interface e1/1/1-4, e1/2/1-4, e1/3/1-4, e1/4/1-4,
e1/5/1-4, e1/6/1-4, e1/7-34
cs1(config-if-range)# shutdown
```

2. Verify that the ISL and the physical ports on the ISL between the two 9336C-FX2 switches cs1 and cs2 are up on ports 1/35 and 1/36:

`show port-channel summary`

Show example

The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch cs1:

```
cs1# show port-channel summary

Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)
```

The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch cs2:

```
(cs2)# show port-channel summary

Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)
```

3. Display the list of neighboring devices:

```
show cdp neighbors
```

This command provides information about the devices that are connected to the system.

Show example

The following example lists the neighboring devices on switch cs1:

```
cs1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
cs2                Eth1/35        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs2                Eth1/36        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 2
```

The following example lists the neighboring devices on switch cs2:

```
cs2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
cs1                Eth1/35        177    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs1                Eth1/36        177    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 2
```

4. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Each port should display up for `Link` and healthy for `Health Status`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

                                                 Speed(Mbps) Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
--------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy

Node: node2

                                                 Speed(Mbps) Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
--------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy

4 entries were displayed.
```

5. Verify that all cluster LIFs are up and operational:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Each cluster LIF should display `true` for `Is Home` and have a `Status Admin/Oper` of up/up.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- -----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true
4 entries were displayed.
```

6. Verify that auto-revert is enabled on all cluster LIFs:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-revert`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-
revert

          Logical
Vserver   Interface     Auto-revert
--------- ------------- ------------
Cluster
          node1_clus1   true
          node1_clus2   true
          node2_clus1   true
          node2_clus2   true

4 entries were displayed.
```

7. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0a on node1, and then connect e0a to port 1 on cluster switch cs1, using the appropriate cabling supported by the 9336C-FX2 switches.

The Hardware Universe - Switches contains more information about cabling.

Hardware Universe - Switches

8. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0a on node2, and then connect e0a to port 2 on cluster switch cs1, using the appropriate cabling supported by the 9336C-FX2 switches.
9. Enable all node-facing ports on cluster switch cs1.

Show example

The following example shows that ports 1/1 through 1/34 are enabled on switch cs1:

```
cs1# config
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
cs1(config)# interface e1/1/1-4, e1/2/1-4, e1/3/1-4, e1/4/1-4,
e1/5/1-4, e1/6/1-4, e1/7-34
cs1(config-if-range)# no shutdown
```

10. Verify that all cluster LIFs are up, operational, and display as `true` for `Is Home`:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Show example

The following example shows that all of the LIFs are up on node1 and node2 and that `Is Home` results are true:

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

         Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver  Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node         Port
Home
-------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ -----------
------- ----
Cluster
         node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1        e0a
true
         node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1        e0b
true
         node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2        e0a
true
         node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2        e0b
true

4 entries were displayed.
```

11. Display information about the status of the nodes in the cluster:

    `cluster show`

    Show example

    The following example displays information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  ------------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false

2 entries were displayed.
```

12. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0b on node1, and then connect e0b to port 1 on cluster switch cs2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the 9336C-FX2 switches.

13. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e0b on node2, and then connect e0b to port 2 on cluster switch cs2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the 9336C-FX2 switches.
14. Enable all node-facing ports on cluster switch cs2.

Show example

The following example shows that ports 1/1 through 1/34 are enabled on switch cs2:

```
cs2# config
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
cs2(config)# interface e1/1/1-4, e1/2/1-4, e1/3/1-4, e1/4/1-4,
e1/5/1-4, e1/6/1-4, e1/7-34
cs2(config-if-range)# no shutdown
```

15. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

The following example shows that all of the cluster ports are up on node1 and node2:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

4 entries were displayed.
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Verify that all interfaces display true for `Is Home`:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster`

   > This might take several minutes to complete.

Show example

The following example shows that all LIFs are up on node1 and node2 and that `Is Home` results are true:

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

          Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver   Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node       Port
Home
--------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- ----
Cluster
          node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1      e0a
true
          node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1      e0b
true
          node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2      e0a
true
          node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2      e0b
true

4 entries were displayed.
```

2. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

`show cdp neighbors`

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
(cs1)# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1              Eth1/1         133    H           FAS2980
e0a
node2              Eth1/2         133    H           FAS2980
e0a
cs2                Eth1/35        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs2                Eth1/36        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4

(cs2)# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1              Eth1/1         133    H           FAS2980
e0b
node2              Eth1/2         133    H           FAS2980
e0b
cs1                Eth1/35        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs1                Eth1/36        175    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4
```

3. Display information about the discovered network devices in your cluster:

```
network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2       /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/2              N9K-
C9336C
             e0b    cs2                       0/2              N9K-
C9336C
node1       /cdp
             e0a    cs1                       0/1              N9K-
C9336C
             e0b    cs2                       0/1              N9K-
C9336C

4 entries were displayed.
```

4. Verify that the settings are disabled:

```
network options switchless-cluster show
```

> It might take several minutes for the command to complete. Wait for the '3 minute lifetime to expire' announcement.

Show example

The false output in the following example shows that the configuration settings are disabled:

```
cluster1::*> network options switchless-cluster show
Enable Switchless Cluster: false
```

5. Verify the status of the node members in the cluster:

```
cluster show
```

Show example

The following example shows information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  --------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false
```

6. Verify that the cluster network has full connectivity:

`cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2
Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1 e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1 e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2 e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2 e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:

Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)

Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

7. Change the privilege level back to admin:

`set -privilege admin`

8. For ONTAP 9.8 and later, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password` and `system switch ethernet log enable-collection`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

> ℹ If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

9. For ONTAP releases 9.5P16, 9.6P12, and 9.7P10 and later patch releases, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

`system cluster-switch log setup-password` and `system cluster-switch log enable-`

collection

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

10. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

Replace switches

Replace a Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switch

Follow these steps to replace a defective Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch in a cluster network. This is a nondisruptive procedure (NDU).

Review requirements

Before performing the switch replacement, make sure that:

- On the existing cluster and network infrastructure:
  - The existing cluster is verified as completely functional, with at least one fully connected cluster switch.
  - All cluster ports are **up**.
  - All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are **up** and on their home ports.
  - The ONTAP `cluster ping-cluster -node node1` command must indicate that basic connectivity and larger than PMTU communication are successful on all paths.
- On the Nexus 9336C-FX2 replacement switch:
  - Management network connectivity on the replacement switch is functional.
  - Console access to the replacement switch is in place.
  - The node connections are ports 1/1 through 1/34.
  - All Inter-Switch Link (ISL) ports is disabled on ports 1/35 and 1/36.
  - The desired reference configuration file (RCF) and NX-OS operating system image switch is loaded onto the switch.
  - Initial customization of the switch is complete, as detailed in Configure the 9336C-FX2 cluster switch.

    Any previous site customizations, such as STP, SNMP, and SSH, are copied to the new switch.
- You have executed the command for migrating a cluster LIF from the node where the cluster LIF is hosted.

Replace the switch

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the existing Nexus 9336C-FX2 switches are cs1 and cs2.
- The name of the new Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch is newcs2.
- The node names are node1 and node2.
- The cluster ports on each node are named e0a and e0b.
- The cluster LIF names are node1_clus1 and node1_clus2 for node1, and node2_clus1 and node2_clus2 for node2.
- The prompt for changes to all cluster nodes is cluster1::*>

About this task

The following procedure is based on the following cluster network topology:

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ----------- --------
------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000 healthy
false
4 entries were displayed.



cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster
            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node          Port
Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1         e0a
true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1         e0b
```

```
true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2         e0a
true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2         e0b
true
4 entries were displayed.



cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface         Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Eth1/2            N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Eth1/2            N9K-
C9336C
node1      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       Eth1/1            N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    cs2                       Eth1/1            N9K-
C9336C
4 entries were displayed.



cs1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform      Port
ID
node1              Eth1/1         144    H           FAS2980       e0a
node2              Eth1/2         145    H           FAS2980       e0a
cs2                Eth1/35        176    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs2(FDO220329V5)   Eth1/36        176    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4
```

```
cs2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform      Port
ID
node1              Eth1/1         139    H           FAS2980       e0b
node2              Eth1/2         124    H           FAS2980       e0b
cs1                Eth1/35        178    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs1                Eth1/36        178    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4
```

Step 1: Prepare for replacement

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh`

   where x is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

   > The AutoSupport message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that automatic case creation is suppressed during the maintenance window.

2. Install the appropriate RCF and image on the switch, newcs2, and make any necessary site preparations.

   If necessary, verify, download, and install the appropriate versions of the RCF and NX-OS software for the new switch. If you have verified that the new switch is correctly set up and does not need updates to the RCF and NX-OS software, continue to step 2.

   a. Go to the *NetApp Cluster and Management Network Switches Reference Configuration File Description Page* on the NetApp Support Site.

   b. Click the link for the *Cluster Network and Management Network Compatibility Matrix*, and then note the required switch software version.

   c. Click your browser's back arrow to return to the Description page, click **CONTINUE**, accept the license agreement, and then go to the Download page.

   d. Follow the steps on the Download page to download the correct RCF and NX-OS files for the version of ONTAP software you are installing.

3. On the new switch, log in as admin and shut down all of the ports that will be connected to the node cluster interfaces (ports 1/1 to 1/34).

   If the switch that you are replacing is not functional and is powered down, go to Step 4. The LIFs on the cluster nodes should have already failed over to the other cluster port for each node.

Show example

```
newcs2# config
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
newcs2(config)# interface e1/1-34
newcs2(config-if-range)# shutdown
```

4. Verify that all cluster LIFs have auto-revert enabled:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-revert`

   Show example

```
cluster1::> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-
revert

             Logical
Vserver      Interface     Auto-revert
------------ ------------- -------------
Cluster      node1_clus1   true
Cluster      node1_clus2   true
Cluster      node2_clus1   true
Cluster      node2_clus2   true

4 entries were displayed.
```

5. Verify that all the cluster LIFs can communicate:

   `cluster ping-cluster`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster node1

Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1 e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1 e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2 e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2 e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

Step 2: Configure cables and ports

1. Shut down the ISL ports 1/35 and 1/36 on the Nexus 9336C-FX2 switch cs1.

   Show example

```
cs1# configure
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
cs1(config)# interface e1/35-36
cs1(config-if-range)# shutdown
cs1(config-if-range)#
```

2. Remove all of the cables from the Nexus 9336C-FX2 cs2 switch, and then connect them to the same ports on the Nexus C9336C-FX2 newcs2 switch.

3. Bring up the ISLs ports 1/35 and 1/36 between the cs1 and newcs2 switches, and then verify the port channel operation status.

   Port-Channel should indicate Po1(SU) and Member Ports should indicate Eth1/35(P) and Eth1/36(P).

   Show example

   This example enables ISL ports 1/35 and 1/36 and displays the port channel summary on switch cs1:

```
cs1# configure
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.
cs1(config)# int e1/35-36
cs1(config-if-range)# no shutdown

cs1(config-if-range)# show port-channel summary
Flags:  D - Down        P - Up in port-channel (members)
        I - Individual  H - Hot-standby (LACP only)
        s - Suspended   r - Module-removed
        b - BFD Session Wait
        S - Switched    R - Routed
        U - Up (port-channel)
        p - Up in delay-lacp mode (member)
        M - Not in use. Min-links not met
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
Group Port-       Type     Protocol  Member       Ports
      Channel
--------------------------------------------------------------------
------------
1     Po1(SU)     Eth      LACP      Eth1/35(P)   Eth1/36(P)

cs1(config-if-range)#
```

4. Verify that port e0b is up on all nodes:

   `network port show ipspace Cluster`

Show example

The output should be similar to the following:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- -------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- -------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/auto   -
false

4 entries were displayed.
```

5. On the same node you used in the previous step, revert the cluster LIF associated with the port in the previous step by using the network interface revert command.

Show example

In this example, LIF node1_clus2 on node1 is successfully reverted if the Home value is true and the port is e0b.

The following commands return LIF `node1_clus2` on `node1` to home port `e0a` and displays information about the LIFs on both nodes. Bringing up the first node is successful if the Is Home column is true for both cluster interfaces and they show the correct port assignments, in this example `e0a` and `e0b` on node1.

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- -----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0a     false

4 entries were displayed.
```

6. Display information about the nodes in a cluster:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

   This example shows that the node health for node1 and node2 in this cluster is true:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node          Health  Eligibility
------------- ------- ------------
node1         false   true
node2         true    true
```

7. Verify that all physical cluster ports are up:

```
network port show ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node node1
Ignore
                                                    Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace     Broadcast Domain  Link  MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ----------- ----------------- ----- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster     Cluster           up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster     Cluster           up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                    Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ----- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

4 entries were displayed.
```

8. Verify that all the cluster LIFs can communicate:

```
cluster ping-cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2
Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1 e0a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1 e0b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2 e0a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2 e0b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

9. Confirm the following cluster network configuration:

```
network port show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster
Node: node1

Ignore
                                       Speed(Mbps)            Health
Health
Port      IPspace     Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ----------- ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster     Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster     Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                        Speed(Mbps)           Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e0a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000 auto/10000
healthy  false
e0b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000 auto/10000
healthy  false

4 entries were displayed.


cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e0a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
```

```
e0b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e0a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e0b     true

4 entries were displayed.

cluster1::> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp

Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node2      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/2              N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    newcs2                    0/2              N9K-
C9336C
node1      /cdp
            e0a    cs1                       0/1              N9K-
C9336C
            e0b    newcs2                    0/1              N9K-
C9336C

4 entries were displayed.


cs1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID            Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                Eth1/1         144    H           FAS2980
e0a
node2                Eth1/2         145    H           FAS2980
e0a
newcs2               Eth1/35        176    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
newcs2               Eth1/36        176    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
```

```
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4


cs2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID          Local Intrfce  Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1              Eth1/1         139    H           FAS2980
e0b
node2              Eth1/2         124    H           FAS2980
e0b
cs1                Eth1/35        178    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/35
cs1                Eth1/36        178    R S I s     N9K-C9336C
Eth1/36

Total entries displayed: 4
```

Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. For ONTAP 9.8 and later, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password` and `system switch ethernet log enable-collection`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system  switch ethernet log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enable cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

ⓘ If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

2. For ONTAP releases 9.5P16, 9.6P12, and 9.7P10 and later patch releases, enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature for collecting switch-related log files, using the commands:

`system cluster-switch log setup-password` and `system cluster-switch log enable-`

`collection`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
RSA key fingerprint is
e5:8b:c6:dc:e2:18:18:09:36:63:d9:63:dd:03:d9:cc
Do you want to continue? {y|n}::[n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
RSA key fingerprint is
57:49:86:a1:b9:80:6a:61:9a:86:8e:3c:e3:b7:1f:b1
Do you want to continue? {y|n}:: [n] y

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system cluster-switch log enable-collection

Do you want to enable cluster log collection for all nodes in the
cluster?
{y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*>
```

ⓘ If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

3. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

Replace Cisco Nexus 9336C-FX2 cluster switches with switchless connections

You can migrate from a cluster with a switched cluster network to one where two nodes are directly connected for ONTAP 9.3 and later.

Review requirements

Guidelines

Review the following guidelines:

- Migrating to a two-node switchless cluster configuration is a nondisruptive operation. Most systems have two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, but you can also use this procedure for systems with a larger number of dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, such as four, six or eight.
- You cannot use the switchless cluster interconnect feature with more than two nodes.
- If you have an existing two-node cluster that uses cluster interconnect switches and is running ONTAP 9.3 or later, you can replace the switches with direct, back-to-back connections between the nodes.

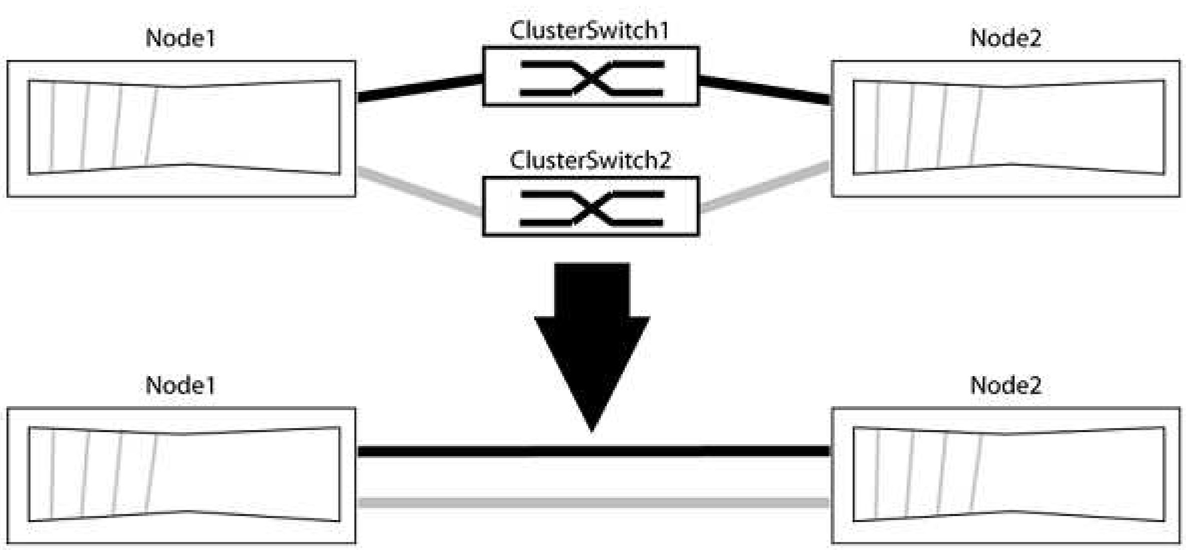
What you'll need

- A healthy cluster that consists of two nodes connected by cluster switches. The nodes must be running the same ONTAP release.
- Each node with the required number of dedicated cluster ports, which provide redundant cluster interconnect connections to support your system configuration. For example, there are two redundant ports for a system with two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node.

Migrate the switches

About this task

The following procedure removes the cluster switches in a two-node cluster and replaces each connection to the switch with a direct connection to the partner node.



About the examples

The examples in the following procedure show nodes that are using "e0a" and "e0b" as cluster ports. Your nodes might be using different cluster ports as they vary by system.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering `y` when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt `*>` appears.

2. ONTAP 9.3 and later supports automatic detection of switchless clusters, which is enabled by default.

   You can verify that detection of switchless clusters is enabled by running the advanced privilege command:

   `network options detect-switchless-cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example output shows if the option is enabled.

   ```
   cluster::*> network options detect-switchless-cluster show
      (network options detect-switchless-cluster show)
   Enable Switchless Cluster Detection: true
   ```

   If "Enable Switchless Cluster Detection" is `false`, contact NetApp support.

3. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=<number_of_hours>h`

   where `h` is the duration of the maintenance window in hours. The message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that they can suppress automatic case creation during the maintenance window.

   In the following example, the command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

   Show example

   ```
   cluster::*> system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all
   -message MAINT=2h
   ```

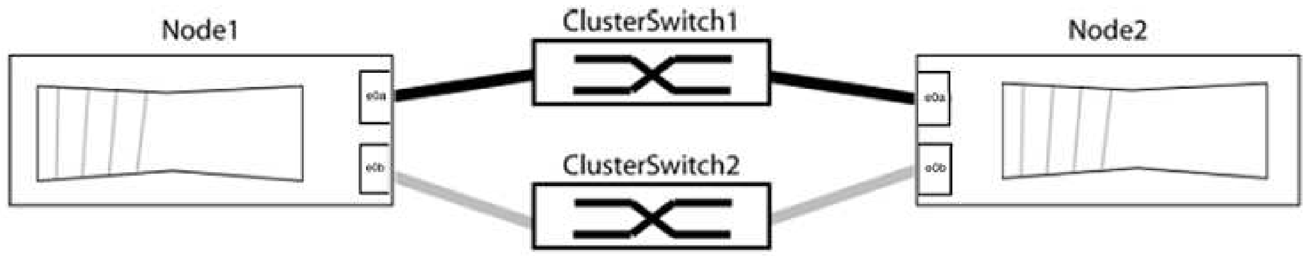
Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Organize the cluster ports on each switch into groups so that the cluster ports in group1 go to cluster switch1 and the cluster ports in group2 go to cluster switch2. These groups are required later in the procedure.

2. Identify the cluster ports and verify link status and health:

   ```
   network port show -ipspace Cluster
   ```

   In the following example for nodes with cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b", one group is identified as “node1:e0a” and “node2:e0a” and the other group as “node1:e0b” and “node2:e0b”. Your nodes might be using different cluster ports because they vary by system.

   Verify that the ports have a value of `up` for the “Link” column and a value of `healthy` for the “Health Status” column.

Show example

```
cluster::> network port show -ipspace Cluster
Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port  IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port  IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
4 entries were displayed.
```

3. Confirm that all the cluster LIFs are on their home ports.

   Verify that the “is-home” column is `true` for each of the cluster LIFs:

   ```
   network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home
   ```

Show example

```
cluster::*> net int show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home
(network interface show)
vserver  lif          is-home
-------- ------------ --------
Cluster  node1_clus1  true
Cluster  node1_clus2  true
Cluster  node2_clus1  true
Cluster  node2_clus2  true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If there are cluster LIFs that are not on their home ports, revert those LIFs to their home ports:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *`

4. Disable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

5. Verify that all ports listed in the previous step are connected to a network switch:

   `network device-discovery show -port` *`cluster_port`*

   The “Discovered Device” column should be the name of the cluster switch that the port is connected to.

   Show example

   The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to cluster switches "cs1" and "cs2".

```
cluster::> network device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/     Local  Discovered
Protocol  Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
--------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
          e0a    cs1                       0/11       BES-53248
          e0b    cs2                       0/12       BES-53248
node2/cdp
          e0a    cs1                       0/9        BES-53248
          e0b    cs2                       0/9        BES-53248
4 entries were displayed.
```

6. Verify the cluster connectivity:

```
cluster ping-cluster -node local
```

7. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

```
cluster ring show
```

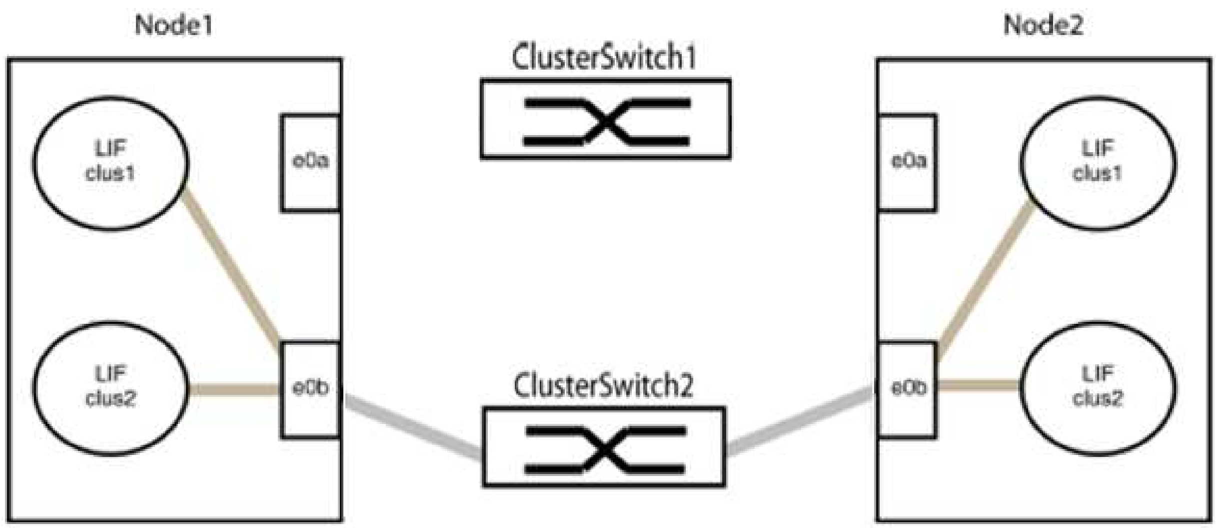
All units must be either master or secondary.

8. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 1.

> ⓘ To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group1 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

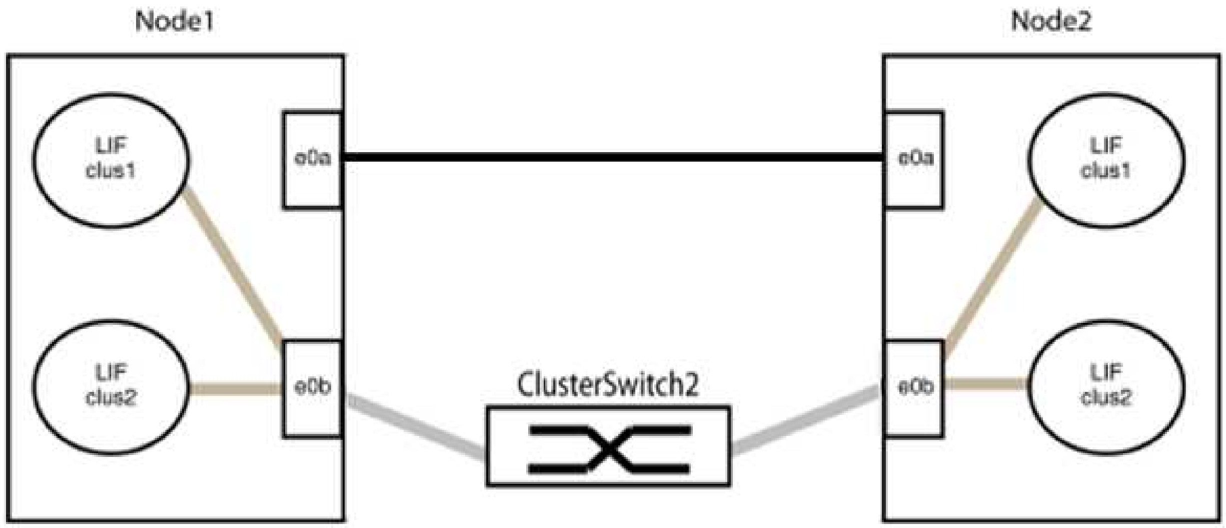
a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group1 at the same time.

In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0a" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the switch and port "e0b" on each node:



b. Cable the ports in group1 back-to-back.

In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2:



9. The switchless cluster network option transitions from `false` to `true`. This might take up to 45 seconds. Confirm that the switchless option is set to `true`:

   `network options switchless-cluster show`

   The following example shows that the switchless cluster is enabled:

   ```
   cluster::*> network options switchless-cluster show
   Enable Switchless Cluster: true
   ```

10. Verify that the cluster network is not disrupted:

    `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

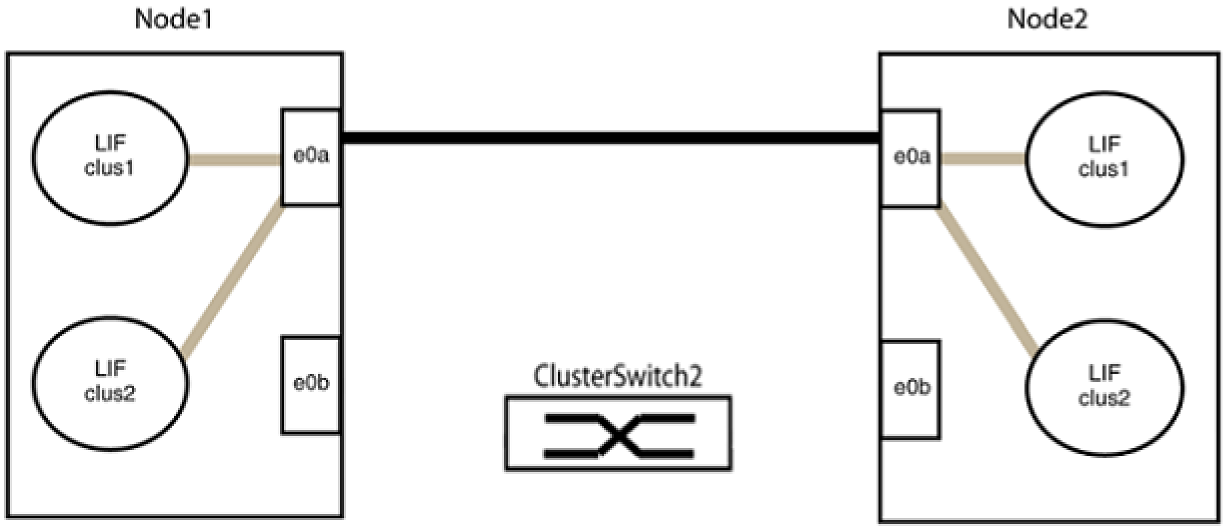
    > Before proceeding to the next step, you must wait at least two minutes to confirm a working back-to-back connection on group 1.

11. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 2.

    > To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group2 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

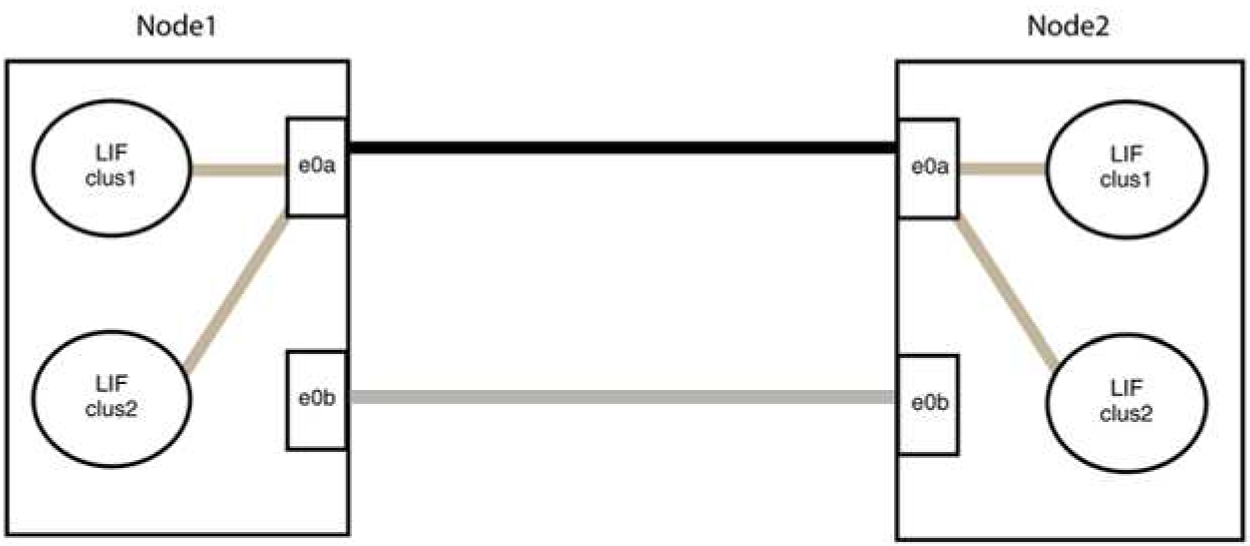
    a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group2 at the same time.

       In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0b" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the direct connection between the "e0a" ports:



b. Cable the ports in group2 back-to-back.

   In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2 and "e0b" on node1 is connected to "e0b" on node2:



Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Verify that the ports on both nodes are correctly connected:

   `network device-discovery show -port cluster_port`

Show example

The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to the corresponding port on the cluster partner:

```
cluster::> net device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
            e0a    node2                     e0a        AFF-A300
            e0b    node2                     e0b        AFF-A300
node1/lldp
            e0a    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0a        -
            e0b    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0b        -
node2/cdp
            e0a    node1                     e0a        AFF-A300
            e0b    node1                     e0b        AFF-A300
node2/lldp
            e0a    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0a        -
            e0b    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0b        -
8 entries were displayed.
```

2. Re-enable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true`

3. Verify that all LIFs are home. This might take a few seconds.

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster -lif lif_name`

Show example

The LIFs have been reverted if the “Is Home” column is `true`, as shown for `node1_clus2` and `node2_clus2` in the following example:

```
cluster::> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields curr-
port,is-home
vserver  lif           curr-port is-home
-------- ------------- --------- -------
Cluster  node1_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node1_clus2   e0b       true
Cluster  node2_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node2_clus2   e0b       true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If any cluster LIFS have not returned to their home ports, revert them manually from the local node:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif lif_name`

4. Check the cluster status of the nodes from the system console of either node:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example shows epsilon on both nodes to be `false`:

   ```
   Node  Health  Eligibility Epsilon
   ----- ------- ----------- --------
   node1 true    true        false
   node2 true    true        false
   2 entries were displayed.
   ```

5. Confirm connectivity between the cluster ports:

   `cluster ping-cluster local`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

   For more information, see NetApp KB Article 1010449: How to suppress automatic case creation during scheduled maintenance windows.

7. Change the privilege level back to admin:

```
set -privilege admin
```

NVIDIA SN2100

Overview

Overview of installation and configuration for NVIDIA SN2100 switches

The NVIDIA SN2100 is a cluster switch that allows you to build ONTAP clusters with more than two nodes.

Initial configuration overview

To configure a NVIDIA SN2100 switch on systems running ONTAP, follow these steps:

1. Install the hardware for the NVIDIA SN2100 switch.

   Instructions are available in the *NVIDIA Switch Installation Guide*.

2. Configure the switch.

   Instructions are available in NVIDIA's documentation.

3. Review cabling and configuration considerations.

   Review requirements for optical connections, the QSA adapter, and the switchport speed.

4. Cable the NS224 shelves as switch-attached storage.

   Follow the cabling procedures if you have a system in which the NS224 drive shelves need to be cabled as switch-attached storage (not direct-attached storage).

5. Install Cumulus Linux in Cumulus mode or install Cumulus Linux in ONIE mode.

   You can install Cumulus Linux (CL) OS when the switch is running either Cumulus Linux or ONIE.

6. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script.

   There are two RCF scripts available for Clustering and Storage applications. The procedure for each is the same.

7. Enable log collection.

   Use this feature to collect switch-related log files in ONTAP.

8. Configure SNMPv3 for monitoring.

   This release includes support for SNMPv3 for switch log collection and for Switch Health Monitoring (SHM).

The procedures use Network Command Line Utility (NCLU), which is a command line interface that ensures Cumulus Linux is fully accessible to all. The net command is the wrapper utility you use to execute actions from a terminal.

Additional information

Before you begin installation or maintenance, be sure to review the following:

- Configuration requirements
- Components and part numbers
- Required documentation
- Hardware Universe for all supported ONTAP versions.

Configuration requirements for NVIDIA SN2100 switches

For NVIDIA SN2100 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review all configuration requirements.

Installation requirements

If you want to build ONTAP clusters with more than two nodes, you need two supported cluster network switches. You can use additional management switches, which are optional.

You install the NVIDIA SN2100 switch (X190006) in the NVIDIA dual/single switch cabinet with the standard brackets that are included with the switch.

For cabling guidelines, see Review cabling and configuration considerations.

ONTAP and Linux support

The NVIDIA SN2100 switch is a 10/25/40/100GbE switch running Cumulus Linux. The switch supports the following:

- ONTAP 9.10.1P3.

  The SN2100 switch serves Cluster and Storage applications in ONTAP 9.10.1P3 over different switch-pairs.

- Cumulus Linux (CL) OS version.

  In order to download the SN2100 Cumulus software from NVIDIA, you must have login credentials to access NVIDIA's Enterprise Support Portal. See the Knowledge Base article How to register with NVIDIA for Enterprise Support Portal Access.
  For current compatibility information, see the NVIDIA Ethernet Switches information page.

- You can install Cumulus Linux when the switch is running Cumulus Linux or ONIE.

Components and part numbers for NVIDIA SN2100 switches

For NVIDIA SN2100 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review the list of components and part numbers for the cabinet and rail kit.

Cabinet details

You install the NVIDIA SN2100 switch (X190006) in the NVIDIA dual/single switch cabinet with the standard brackets that are included with the switch.

Rail kit details

The following table lists the part number and description for the SN2100 switches and rail kits:

Part number	Description
X190006-PE	Cluster Switch, NVIDIA SN2100, 16PT 100GbE, PTSX
X190006-PI	Cluster Switch, NVIDIA SN2100, 16PT 100GbE, PSIN
X-MTEF-KIT-D	Rail Kit, NVIDIA Dual switch side by side
X-MTEF-KIT-E	Rail Kit, NVIDIA Single switch short depth

> See NVIDIA documentation for details on installing your SN2100 switch and rail kit.

Documentation requirements for NVIDIA SN2100 switches

For NVIDIA SN2100 switch installation and maintenance, be sure to review all the recommended documentation.

Title	Description
NVIDIA Switch Installation Guide	Describes how to install your NVIDIA SN2100 switches.
NS224 NVMe Drive Shelf Cabling Guide	Overview and illustrations showing how to configure cabling for drive shelves.
NetApp Hardware Universe	Allows you to confirm supported hardware, such as storage switches and cables, for your platform model.

Install hardware

Install the hardware for the NVIDIA SN2100 switch

To install the SN2100 hardware, refer to NVIDIA's documentation.

Steps

1. Review the configuration requirements.
2. Follow the instructions in NVIDIA Switch Installation Guide.

What's next?

Configure the switch.

Configure the NVIDIA SN2100 switch

To configure the SN2100 switch, refer to NVIDIA's documentation.

Steps

1. Review the configuration requirements.
2. Follow the instructions in NVIDIA System Bring-Up..

What's next?

Review cabling and configuration considerations.

Review cabling and configuration considerations

Before configuring your NVIDIA SN2100 switch, review the following considerations.

NVIDIA port details

Switch ports	Ports usage
swp1s0-3	4x10GbE breakout cluster port nodes
swp2s0-3	4x25GbE breakout cluster port nodes
swp3-14	40/100GbE cluster port nodes
swp15-16	40/100GbE Inter-Switch Link (ISL) ports

See the Hardware Universe for more information on switch ports.

Link-up delays with optical connections

If you are experiencing link-up delays of more than five seconds, Cumulus Linux 5.4 and later includes support for fast link-up. You can configure the links by using the `nv set` command as follows:

```
nv set interface <interface-id> link fast-linkup on
nv config apply
reload the switchd
```

Show example

```
cumulus@cumulus-cs13:mgmt:~$ nv set interface swp5 link fast-linkup on
cumulus@cumulus-cs13:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
switchd need to reload on this config change

Are you sure? [y/N] y
applied [rev_id: 22]

Only switchd reload required
```

Support for copper connections

The following configuration changes are required to fix this issue.

Cumulus Linux 4.4.3

1. Identify the name for each interface using 40GbE/100GbE copper cables:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show interface pluggables

Interface  Identifier     Vendor Name     Vendor PN    Vendor SN
Vendor Rev
---------  -------------  --------------  -----------  -------------
----------
swp3       0x11 (QSFP28)  Molex           112-00576    93A2229911111
B0
swp4       0x11 (QSFP28)  Molex           112-00576    93A2229922222
B0
```

2. Add the following two lines to the `/etc/cumulus/switchd.conf` file for every port (swp<n>) that is using 40GbE/100GbE copper cables:
   - `interface.swp<n>.enable_media_depended_linkup_flow=TRUE`
   - `interface.swp<n>.enable_short_tuning=TRUE`

   For example:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ sudo nano /etc/cumulus/switchd.conf
.
.
interface.swp3.enable_media_depended_linkup_flow=TRUE
interface.swp3.enable_short_tuning=TRUE
interface.swp4.enable_media_depended_linkup_flow=TRUE
interface.swp4.enable_short_tuning=TRUE
```

3. Restart the `switchd` service:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ sudo systemctl restart switchd.service
```

4. Confirm that the ports are up:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show interface all

State  Name      Spd   MTU    Mode       LLDP              Summary
-----  --------- ----  -----  ---------- ----------------- --------
UP     swp3      100G  9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
bridge(UP)
UP     swp4      100G  9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
bridge(UP)
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Identify the name for each interface using 40GbE/100GbE copper cables:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show interface pluggables

Interface  Identifier     Vendor Name     Vendor PN    Vendor SN
Vendor Rev
---------  -------------  --------------  -----------  -------------
----------
swp3       0x11 (QSFP28)  Molex           112-00576    93A2229911111
B0
swp4       0x11 (QSFP28)  Molex           112-00576    93A2229922222
B0
```

2. Configure the links using the `nv set` command as follows:
   - `nv set interface <interface-id> link fast-linkup on`
   - `nv config apply`
   - Reload the `switchd` service

     For example:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set interface swp5 link fast-linkup on
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
switchd need to reload on this config change

Are you sure? [y/N] y
applied [rev_id: 22]

Only switchd reload required
```

3. Confirm that the ports are up:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show interface all

State  Name       Spd   MTU    Mode       LLDP              Summary
-----  ---------- ----  -----  ---------- ----------------- --------
UP     swp3       100G  9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
bridge(UP)
UP     swp4       100G  9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
bridge(UP)
```

See this KB for further details.

On Cumulus Linux 4.4.2, copper connections are not supported on SN2100 switches with X1151A NIC, X1146A NIC, or onboard 100GbE ports.
For example:

- AFF A800 on ports e0a and e0b
- AFF A320 on ports e0g and e0h

QSA adapter

When a QSA adapter is used to connect to the 10GbE/25GbE cluster ports on a platform, the link might not come up.

To resolve this issue, do the following:

- For 10GbE, manually set the swp1s0-3 link speed to 10000 and set auto-negotiation to off.
- For 25GbE, manually set the swp2s0-3 link speed to 25000 and set auto-negotiation to off.

> ⓘ When using 10GbE/25GbE QSA adapters, insert them in non-breakout 40GbE/100GbE ports (swp3-swp14). Do not insert the QSA adapter in a port that is configured for breakout.

Setting interface speed on breakout ports

Depending on the transceiver in the switch port, you might need to set the speed on the switch interface to a fixed speed. If using 10GbE and 25GbE breakout ports, verify that auto-negotiation is off and set the interface speed on the switch.

Cumulus Linux 4.4.3

For example:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net add int swp1s3 link autoneg off && net com
--- /etc/network/interfaces     2019-11-17 00:17:13.470687027 +0000
+++ /run/nclu/ifupdown2/interfaces.tmp  2019-11-24 00:09:19.435226258
+0000
@@ -37,21 +37,21 @@
     alias 10G Intra-Cluster Node
     link-autoneg off
     link-speed 10000  <---- port speed set
     mstpctl-bpduguard yes
     mstpctl-portadminedge yes
     mtu 9216

auto swp1s3
iface swp1s3
     alias 10G Intra-Cluster Node
-    link-autoneg off
+    link-autoneg on
     link-speed 10000 <---- port speed set
     mstpctl-bpduguard yes
     mstpctl-portadminedge yes
     mtu 9216

auto swp2s0
iface swp2s0
     alias 25G Intra-Cluster Node
     link-autoneg off
     link-speed 25000 <---- port speed set
```

Check the interface and port status to verify that the settings are applied:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show interface

State  Name      Spd    MTU    Mode        LLDP             Summary
-----  --------  -----  -----  ----------  ---------------
-------------------------------------
.
.
UP     swp1s0     10G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs07 (e4c)       Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s1     10G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs07 (e4d)       Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s2     10G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs08 (e4c)       Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s3     10G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs08 (e4d)       Master:
br_default(UP)
.
.
UP     swp3       40G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs03 (e4e)       Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp4       40G   9216   Trunk/L2    cs04 (e4e)       Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp5       N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp6       N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp7       N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
.
.
UP     swp15      100G  9216   BondMember  cs01 (swp15)     Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16      100G  9216   BondMember  cs01 (swp16)     Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
.
.
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

For example:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set interface swp1s3 link auto-negotiate off
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set interface swp1s3 link speed 10G
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show interface swp1s3

link

  auto-negotiate        off                     off
off
  duplex                full                    full
full
  speed                 10G                     10G
10G
  fec                   auto                    auto
auto
  mtu                   9216                    9216
9216
[breakout]

  state                 up                      up
up
```

Check the interface and port status to verify that the settings are applied:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show interface

State  Name       Spd    MTU    Mode         LLDP              Summary
-----  ---------  -----  -----  ----------   ---------------
------------------------------------
.
.
UP     swp1s0      10G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs07 (e4c)        Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s1      10G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs07 (e4d)        Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s2      10G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs08 (e4c)        Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp1s3      10G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs08 (e4d)        Master:
br_default(UP)
.
.
UP     swp3        40G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs03 (e4e)        Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp4        40G   9216   Trunk/L2     cs04 (e4e)        Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp5        N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                       Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp6        N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                       Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp7        N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                       Master:
br_default(UP)
.
.
UP     swp15       100G  9216   BondMember   cs01 (swp15)      Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16       100G  9216   BondMember   cs01 (swp16)      Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
.
.
```

What's next?

Cable NS224 shelves as switch-attached storage.

Cable the NS224 shelves as switch-attached storage

If you have a system in which the NS224 drive shelves need to be cabled as switch-attached storage (not direct-attached storage), use the information provided here.

- Cable NS224 drive shelves through storage switches:

Cabling switch-attached NS224 drive shelves

- Confirm supported hardware, such as storage switches and cables, for your platform model:

  NetApp Hardware Universe

What's next?

Install Cumulus Linux in Cumulus mode or Install Cumulus Linux in ONIE mode.

Configure software

Software install workflow for NVIDIA SN2100 switches

To install and configure software for a NVIDIA SN2100 switch, follow these steps:

1. Install Cumulus Linux in Cumulus mode or install Cumulus Linux in ONIE mode.

   You can install Cumulus Linux (CL) OS when the switch is running either Cumulus Linux or ONIE.

2. Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script.

   There are two RCF scripts available for Clustering and Storage applications. The procedure for each is the same.

3. Configure SNMPv3 for switch log collection.

   This release includes support for SNMPv3 for switch log collection and for Switch Health Monitoring (SHM).

The procedures use Network Command Line Utility (NCLU), which is a command line interface that ensures Cumulus Linux is fully accessible to all. The net command is the wrapper utility you use to execute actions from a terminal.

Install Cumulus Linux in Cumulus mode

Follow this procedure to install Cumulus Linux (CL) OS when the switch is running in Cumulus mode.

> Cumulus Linux (CL) OS can be installed either when the switch is running Cumulus Linux or ONIE (see Install in ONIE mode).

What you'll need

- Intermediate-level Linux knowledge.
- Familiarity with basic text editing, UNIX file permissions, and process monitoring. A variety of text editors are pre-installed, including `vi` and `nano`.
- Access to a Linux or UNIX shell. If you are running Windows, use a Linux environment as your command line tool for interacting with Cumulus Linux.
- The baud rate requirement is set to 115200 on the serial console switch for NVIDIA SN2100 switch console access, as follows:
  - 115200 baud

- 8 data bits
- 1 stop bit
- parity: none
- flow control: none

About this task

Be aware of the following:

Each time Cumulus Linux is installed, the entire file system structure is erased and rebuilt.

The default password for the cumulus user account is **cumulus**. The first time you log into Cumulus Linux, you must change this default password. Be sure to update any automation scripts before installing a new image. Cumulus Linux provides command line options to change the default password automatically during the installation process.

Example 1. Steps

Cumulus Linux 4.4.3

1. Log in to the switch.

   First time log in to the switch requires username/password of **cumulus**/**cumulus** with `sudo` privileges.

   ```
   cumulus login: cumulus
   Password: cumulus
   You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
   enforced)
   Changing password for cumulus.
   Current password: cumulus
   New password: <new_password>
   Retype new password: <new_password>
   ```

2. Check the Cumulus Linux version: `net show system`

   ```
   cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show system
   Hostname......... cumulus
   Build............ Cumulus Linux 4.4.3
   Uptime........... 0:08:20.860000
   Model............ Mlnx X86
   CPU.............. x86_64 Intel Atom C2558 2.40GHz
   Memory........... 8GB
   Disk............. 14.7GB
   ASIC............. Mellanox Spectrum MT52132
   Ports............ 16 x 100G-QSFP28
   Part Number...... MSN2100-CB2FC
   Serial Number.... MT2105T05177
   Platform Name.... x86_64-mlnx_x86-r0
   Product Name..... MSN2100
   ONIE Version..... 2019.11-5.2.0020-115200
   Base MAC Address. 04:3F:72:43:92:80
   Manufacturer..... Mellanox
   ```

3. Configure the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. The new hostname only becomes effective after restarting the console/SSH session.

   A Cumulus Linux switch provides at least one dedicated Ethernet management port called `eth0`. This interface is specifically for out-of-band management use. By default, the management interface uses DHCPv4 for addressing.

Do not use an underscore (_), apostrophe ('), or non-ASCII characters in the hostname.

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net add hostname sw1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net add interface eth0 ip address
10.233.204.71
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net add interface eth0 ip gateway
10.233.204.1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net pending
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net commit
```

This command modifies both the `/etc/hostname` and `/etc/hosts` files.

4. Confirm that the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway have been updated.

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ hostname sw1
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ ifconfig eth0
eth0: flags=4163<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>  mtu 1500
inet 10.233.204.71  netmask 255.255.254.0  broadcast 10.233.205.255
inet6 fe80::bace:f6ff:fe19:1df6  prefixlen 64  scopeid 0x20<link>
ether b8:ce:f6:19:1d:f6  txqueuelen 1000  (Ethernet)
RX packets 75364  bytes 23013528 (21.9 MiB)
RX errors 0  dropped 7  overruns 0  frame 0
TX packets 4053  bytes 827280 (807.8 KiB)
TX errors 0  dropped 0 overruns 0  carrier 0  collisions 0 device
memory 0xdfc00000-dfc1ffff

cumulus@sw1::mgmt:~$ ip route show vrf mgmt
default via 10.233.204.1 dev eth0
unreachable default metric 4278198272
10.233.204.0/23 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.233.204.71
127.0.0.0/8 dev mgmt proto kernel scope link src 127.0.0.1
```

5. Configure the time zone using NTP interactive mode.
   a. On a terminal, run the following command:

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
   ```

   b. Follow the on-screen menu options to select the geographic area and region.
   c. To set the time zone for all services and daemons, reboot the switch.
   d. Verify that the date and time on the switch are correct and update if necessary.
6. Install Cumulus Linux 4.4.3:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i http://<web-server>/<path>/cumulus-linux-4.4.3-mlx-amd64.bin
```

The installer starts the download. Type **y** when prompted.

7. Reboot the NVIDIA SN2100 switch:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo reboot
```

8. The installation starts automatically, and the following GRUB screen choices appear. Do **not** make any selections.
   - Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux
   - ONIE: Install OS
   - CUMULUS-INSTALL
   - Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux
9. Repeat steps 1 to 4 to log in.
10. Verify that the Cumulus Linux version is 4.4.3: `net show version`

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show version
NCLU_VERSION=1.0-cl4.4.3u0
DISTRIB_ID="Cumulus Linux"
DISTRIB_RELEASE=4.4.3
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Cumulus Linux 4.4.3"
```

11. Create a new user and add this user to the `sudo` group. This user only becomes effective after the console/SSH session is restarted.

```
sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
```

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user 'admin' ...
Adding new user 'admin' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
Creating home directory '/home/admin' ...
Copying files from '/etc/skel' ...
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: password updated successfully
Changing the user information for admin
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default
Full Name []:
Room Number []:
Work Phone []:
Home Phone []:
Other []:
Is the information correct? [Y/n] y

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin sudo
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user `admin' to group `sudo' ...
Adding user admin to group sudo
Done.
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ exit
logout
Connection to 10.233.204.71 closed.

[admin@cycrh6svl01 ~]$ ssh admin@10.233.204.71
admin@10.233.204.71's password:
Linux sw1 4.19.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Cumulus 4.19.206-1+cl4.4.1u1
(2021-09-09) x86_64
Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

For support and online technical documentation, visit
http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/support

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a sublicense
from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the
mark on a world-wide basis.
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Log in to the switch.

   First time log in to the switch requires username/password of **cumulus**/**cumulus** with `sudo` privileges.

```
cumulus login: cumulus
Password: cumulus
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
enforced)
Changing password for cumulus.
Current password: cumulus
New password: <new_password>
Retype new password: <new_password>
```

2. Check the Cumulus Linux version: `nv show system`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show system
operational          applied              description
-------------------- -------------------- ---------------------
hostname             cumulus              cumulus
build                Cumulus Linux 5.3.0  system build version
uptime               6 days, 8:37:36      system uptime
timezone             Etc/UTC              system time zone
```

3. Configure the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway. The new hostname only becomes effective after restarting the console/SSH session.

   A Cumulus Linux switch provides at least one dedicated Ethernet management port called `eth0`. This interface is specifically for out-of-band management use. By default, the management interface uses DHCPv4 for addressing.

   Do not use an underscore (_), apostrophe ('), or non-ASCII characters in the hostname.

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set system hostname sw1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip address
10.233.204.71/24
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip gateway
10.233.204.1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv config save
```

   This command modifies both the `/etc/hostname` and `/etc/hosts` files.

4. Confirm that the hostname, IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway have been updated.

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ hostname sw1
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ ifconfig eth0
eth0: flags=4163<UP,BROADCAST,RUNNING,MULTICAST>  mtu 1500
inet 10.233.204.71  netmask 255.255.254.0  broadcast 10.233.205.255
inet6 fe80::bace:f6ff:fe19:1df6  prefixlen 64  scopeid 0x20<link>
ether b8:ce:f6:19:1d:f6  txqueuelen 1000  (Ethernet)
RX packets 75364  bytes 23013528 (21.9 MiB)
RX errors 0  dropped 7  overruns 0  frame 0
TX packets 4053  bytes 827280 (807.8 KiB)
TX errors 0  dropped 0 overruns 0  carrier 0  collisions 0 device
memory 0xdfc00000-dfc1ffff

cumulus@sw1::mgmt:~$ ip route show vrf mgmt
default via 10.233.204.1 dev eth0
unreachable default metric 4278198272
10.233.204.0/23 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.233.204.71
127.0.0.0/8 dev mgmt proto kernel scope link src 127.0.0.1
```

5. Configure the time zone using NTP interactive mode.
   a. On a terminal, run the following command:

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:~$ sudo dpkg-reconfigure tzdata
   ```

   b. Follow the on-screen menu options to select the geographic area and region.
   c. To set the time zone for all services and daemons, reboot the switch.
   d. Verify that the date and time on the switch are correct and update if necessary.
6. Install Cumulus Linux 5.4:

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i http://<web-
   server>/<path>/cumulus-linux-5.4-mlx-amd64.bin
   ```

   The installer starts the download. Type **y** when prompted.
7. Reboot the NVIDIA SN2100 switch:

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo reboot
   ```

8. The installation starts automatically, and the following GRUB screen choices appear. Do **not** make any selections.
   - Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux
   - ONIE: Install OS

◦ CUMULUS-INSTALL
◦ Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux

9. Repeat steps 1 to 4 to log in.
10. Verify that the Cumulus Linux version is 5.4: `nv show system`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show system
operational          applied              description
-------------------- -------------------- ---------------------
hostname             cumulus              cumulus
build                Cumulus Linux 5.4.0  system build version
uptime               6 days, 13:37:36     system uptime
timezone             Etc/UTC              system time zone
```

11. Verify that the nodes each have a connection to each switch:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode         RemoteHost
RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ----------------------------------
-----------
eth0       100M   Mgmt         mgmt-sw1
Eth110/1/29
swp2s1     25G    Trunk/L2     node1
e0a
swp15      100G   BondMember   sw2
swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember   sw2
swp16
```

12. Create a new user and add this user to the `sudo` group. This user only becomes effective after the console/SSH session is restarted.

```
sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
```

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user 'admin' ...
Adding new user 'admin' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
Creating home directory '/home/admin' ...
Copying files from '/etc/skel' ...
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: password updated successfully
Changing the user information for admin
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default
Full Name []:
Room Number []:
Work Phone []:
Home Phone []:
Other []:
Is the information correct? [Y/n] y

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin sudo
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user `admin' to group `sudo' ...
Adding user admin to group sudo
Done.
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ exit
logout
Connection to 10.233.204.71 closed.

[admin@cycrh6svl01 ~]$ ssh admin@10.233.204.71
admin@10.233.204.71's password:
Linux sw1 4.19.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Cumulus 4.19.206-1+cl4.4.1u1
(2021-09-09) x86_64
Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

For support and online technical documentation, visit
http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/support

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a sublicense
from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the
mark on a world-wide basis.
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

13. Add additional user groups for the admin user to access `nv` commands:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin nvshow
     [sudo] password for cumulus:
     Adding user 'admin' to group 'nvshow' ...
     Adding user admin to group nvshow
     Done.
```

See NVIDIA User Accounts for more information.

What's next?

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script.

Install Cumulus Linux in ONIE mode

Follow this procedure to install Cumulus Linux (CL) OS when the switch is running in ONIE mode.

> Cumulus Linux (CL) OS can be installed either when the switch is running ONIE or Cumulus Linux (see Install in Cumulus mode).

About this task

You can install Cumulus Linux using Open Network Install Environment (ONIE) that allows for automatic discovery of a network installer image. This facilitates the system model of securing switches with an operating system choice, such as Cumulus Linux. The easiest way to install Cumulus Linux with ONIE is with local HTTP discovery.

> If your host is IPv6-enabled, make sure it is running a web server. If your host is IPv4-enabled, make sure it is running DHCP in addition to a web server.

This procedure demonstrates how to upgrade Cumulus Linux after the admin has booted in ONIE.

Example 2. Steps

Cumulus Linux 4.4.3

1. Download the Cumulus Linux installation file to the root directory of the web server. Rename this file to: `onie-installer`.
2. Connect your host to the management Ethernet port of the switch using an Ethernet cable.
3. Power on the switch.

   The switch downloads the ONIE image installer and boots. After the installation completes, the Cumulus Linux login prompt appears in the terminal window.

   > Each time Cumulus Linux is installed, the entire file system structure is erased and rebuilt.

4. Reboot the SN2100 switch:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ sudo reboot
```

5. Press the **Esc** key at the GNU GRUB screen to interrupt the normal boot process, select **ONIE**, and press **Enter**.
6. On the next screen, select **ONIE: Install OS**.
7. The ONIE installer discovery process runs searching for the automatic installation. Press **Enter** to temporarily stop the process.
8. When the discovery process has stopped:

```
ONIE:/ # onie-stop
discover: installer mode detected.
Stopping: discover...start-stop-daemon: warning: killing process
427:
No such process done.
```

9. If the DHCP service is running on your network, verify that the IP address, subnet mask, and the default gateway are correctly assigned:

   `ifconfig eth0`

```
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0
eth0   Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr B8:CE:F6:19:1D:F6
       inet addr:10.233.204.71  Bcast:10.233.205.255
Mask:255.255.254.0
       inet6 addr: fe80::bace:f6ff:fe19:1df6/64 Scope:Link
       UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
       RX packets:21344 errors:0 dropped:2135 overruns:0 frame:0
       TX packets:3500 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
       collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
       RX bytes:6119398 (5.8 MiB)  TX bytes:472975 (461.8 KiB)
       Memory:dfc00000-dfc1ffff

ONIE:/ # route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination     Gateway         Genmask         Flags Metric Ref
Use Iface

default         10.233.204.1    0.0.0.0         UG    0      0
0   eth0
10.233.204.0    *               255.255.254.0   U     0      0
0   eth0
```

10. If the IP addressing scheme is manually defined, do the following:

```
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0 10.233.204.71 netmask 255.255.254.0
ONIE:/ # route add default gw 10.233.204.1
```

11. Repeat step 9 to verify that the static information is correctly entered.
12. Install Cumulus Linux:

```
# onie-nos-install http://<web-server>/<path>/cumulus-linux-4.4.3-
mlx-amd64.bin
```

```
ONIE:/ # route

  Kernel IP routing table

  ONIE:/ # onie-nos-install http://<web-server>/<path>/cumulus-
linux-4.4.3-mlx-amd64.bin

  Stopping: discover... done.
  Info: Attempting
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/cumulus-linux-
4.4.3-mlx-amd64.bin ...
  Connecting to 10.60.132.97 (10.60.132.97:80)
  installer            100% |*|   552M  0:00:00 ETA
  ...
  ...
```

13. After the installation has completed, log in to the switch.

```
cumulus login: cumulus
Password: cumulus
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
enforced)
Changing password for cumulus.
Current password: cumulus
New password: <new_password>
Retype new password: <new_password>
```

14. Verify the Cumulus Linux version: `net show version`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ net show version
NCLU_VERSION=1.0-cl4.4.3u4
DISTRIB_ID="Cumulus Linux"
DISTRIB_RELEASE=4.4.3
DISTRIB_DESCRIPTION="Cumulus Linux 4.4.3"
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Download the Cumulus Linux installation file to the root directory of the web server. Rename this file to: `onie-installer`.
2. Connect your host to the management Ethernet port of the switch using an Ethernet cable.
3. Power on the switch.

   The switch downloads the ONIE image installer and boots. After the installation completes, the Cumulus Linux login prompt appears in the terminal window.

Each time Cumulus Linux is installed, the entire file system structure is erased and rebuilt.

4. Reboot the SN2100 switch:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ sudo reboot
.
.
GNU GRUB version 2.06-3
+---------------------------------------------------------------------
------+
| Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux
|
| Advanced options for Cumulus-Linux GNU/Linux
|
| ONIE
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
+---------------------------------------------------------------------
------+
```

5. Press the Esc key at the GNU GRUB screen to interrupt the normal boot process, select ONIE, and press Enter.

```
.
.
Loading ONIE ...

GNU GRUB version 2.02
+-------------------------------------------------------------------
------+
| ONIE: Install OS
|
| ONIE: Rescue
|
| ONIE: Uninstall OS
|
| ONIE: Update ONIE
|
| ONIE: Embed ONIE
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
|
+-------------------------------------------------------------------
------+
```

Select ONIE: **Install OS.**

6. The ONIE installer discovery process runs searching for the automatic installation. Press **Enter** to temporarily stop the process.
7. When the discovery process has stopped:

```
ONIE:/ # onie-stop
discover: installer mode detected.
Stopping: discover...start-stop-daemon: warning: killing process
427:
No such process done.
```

8. Configure the IP address, subnet mask, and the default gateway:

`ifconfig eth0`

```
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0
eth0   Link encap:Ethernet  HWaddr B8:CE:F6:19:1D:F6
       inet addr:10.233.204.71  Bcast:10.233.205.255
Mask:255.255.254.0
       inet6 addr: fe80::bace:f6ff:fe19:1df6/64 Scope:Link
       UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST  MTU:1500  Metric:1
       RX packets:21344 errors:0 dropped:2135 overruns:0 frame:0
       TX packets:3500 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
       collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
       RX bytes:6119398 (5.8 MiB)  TX bytes:472975 (461.8 KiB)
       Memory:dfc00000-dfc1ffff
ONIE:/ #
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0 10.228.140.27 netmask 255.255.248.0
ONIE:/ # ifconfig eth0
eth0   Link encap:Ethernet HWaddr B8:CE:F6:5E:05:E6
       inet addr:10.228.140.27 Bcast:10.228.143.255
Mask:255.255.248.0
       inet6 addr: fd20:8b1e:b255:822b:bace:f6ff:fe5e:5e6/64
Scope:Global
       inet6 addr: fe80::bace:f6ff:fe5e:5e6/64 Scope:Link
       UP BROADCAST RUNNING MULTICAST MTU:1500 Metric:1
       RX packets:18813 errors:0 dropped:1418 overruns:0 frame:0
       TX packets:491 errors:0 dropped:0 overruns:0 carrier:0
       collisions:0 txqueuelen:1000
       RX bytes:1339596 (1.2 MiB) TX bytes:49379 (48.2 KiB)
       Memory:dfc00000-dfc1ffff
ONIE:/ # route add default gw 10.228.136.1
ONIE:/ # route
Kernel IP routing table
Destination     Gateway         Genmask         Flags Metric Ref
Use Iface

default         10.228.136.1    0.0.0.0         UG    0      0
0   eth0
10.228.136.1    *               255.255.248.0   U     0      0
0   eth0
```

9. Install Cumulus Linux 5.4:

```
# onie-nos-install http://<web-server>/<path>/cumulus-linux-5.4-mlx-amd64.bin
```

```
ONIE:/ # route

  Kernel IP routing table

  ONIE:/ # onie-nos-install http://<web-server>/<path>/cumulus-
linux-5.4-mlx-amd64.bin

  Stopping: discover... done.
  Info: Attempting
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/cumulus-linux-5.4-
mlx-amd64.bin ...
  Connecting to 10.60.132.97 (10.60.132.97:80)
  installer            100% |*|   552M  0:00:00 ETA
  ...
  ...
```

10. After the installation has completed, log in to the switch.

```
cumulus login: cumulus
Password: cumulus
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
enforced)
Changing password for cumulus.
Current password: cumulus
New password: <new_password>
Retype new password: <new_password>
```

11. Verify the Cumulus Linux version: `nv show system`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show system
operational          applied              description
-------------------- -------------------- ---------------------
hostname             cumulus              cumulus
build                Cumulus Linux 5.4.0  system build version
uptime               6 days, 13:37:36     system uptime
timezone             Etc/UTC              system time zone
```

12. Create a new user and add this user to the `sudo` group. This user only becomes effective after the console/SSH session is restarted.

```
sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
```

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user 'admin' ...
Adding new user 'admin' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
Creating home directory '/home/admin' ...
Copying files from '/etc/skel' ...
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: password updated successfully
Changing the user information for admin
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default
Full Name []:
Room Number []:
Work Phone []:
Home Phone []:
Other []:
Is the information correct? [Y/n] y

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin sudo
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user `admin' to group `sudo' ...
Adding user admin to group sudo
Done.
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ exit
logout
Connection to 10.233.204.71 closed.

[admin@cycrh6svl01 ~]$ ssh admin@10.233.204.71
admin@10.233.204.71's password:
Linux sw1 4.19.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Cumulus 4.19.206-1+cl4.4.1u1
(2021-09-09) x86_64
Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

For support and online technical documentation, visit
http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/support

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a sublicense
from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the
mark on a world-wide basis.
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

13. Add additional user groups for the admin user to access `nv` commands:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin nvshow
     [sudo] password for cumulus:
     Adding user `admin' to group `nvshow' ...
     Adding user admin to group nvshow
     Done.
```

See NVIDIA User Accounts for more information.

What's next?

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script.

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script

Follow this procedure to install the RCF script.

What you'll need

Before installing the RCF script, make sure that the following are available on the switch:

- Cumulus Linux is installed. See the Hardware Universe for supported versions.
- IP address, subnet mask, and default gateway defined via DHCP or manually configured.

> ⓘ You must specify a user in the RCF (in addition to the admin user) to be used specifically for log collection.

Current RCF script versions

There are two RCF scripts available for Cluster and Storage applications. Download RCFs from here. The procedure for each is the same.

- Cluster: **MSN2100-RCF-v1.*x*-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP**
- Storage: **MSN2100-RCF-v1.*x*-Storage**

About the examples

The following example procedure shows how to download and apply the RCF script for Cluster switches.

Example command output uses switch management IP address 10.233.204.71, netmask 255.255.254.0 and default gateway 10.233.204.1.

Example 3. Steps

Cumulus Linux 4.4.3

1. Display the available interfaces on the SN2100 switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show interface all

State  Name   Spd  MTU   Mode         LLDP                Summary
-----  -----  ---  ----- -----------  ------------------
--------------
...
...
ADMDN  swp1   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp2   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp3   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp4   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp5   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp6   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp7   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp8   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp9   N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp10  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp11  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp12  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp13  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp14  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp15  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
ADMDN  swp16  N/A  9216  NotConfigured
```

2. Copy the RCF python script to the switch.

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ pwd
/home/cumulus
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt: /tmp$ scp <user>@<host:/<path>/MSN2100-RCF-
v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP ./
ssologin@10.233.204.71's password:
MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP         100% 8607
111.2KB/s         00:00
```

While `scp` is used in the example, you can use your preferred method of file transfer.

3. Apply the RCF python script **MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP**.

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:/tmp$ sudo python3 MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-
Breakout-LLDP
[sudo] password for cumulus:
...
Step 1: Creating the banner file
Step 2: Registering banner message
Step 3: Updating the MOTD file
Step 4: Ensuring passwordless use of cl-support command by admin
Step 5: Disabling apt-get
Step 6: Creating the interfaces
Step 7: Adding the interface config
Step 8: Disabling cdp
Step 9: Adding the lldp config
Step 10: Adding the RoCE base config
Step 11: Modifying RoCE Config
Step 12: Configure SNMP
Step 13: Reboot the switch
```

The RCF script completes the steps listed in the example above.

> In step 3 **Updating the MOTD file** above, the command `cat /etc/motd` is run. This allows you to verify the RCF filename, RCF version, ports to use, and other important information in the RCF banner.

> For any RCF python script issues that cannot be corrected, contact NetApp Support for assistance.

4. Verify the configuration after the reboot:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show interface all

State  Name       Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP                Summary
-----  ---------- ----  -----  ----------  ------------------  --------
...
...
DN     swp1s0     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                        Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp1s1     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                        Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp1s2     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                        Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp1s3     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                        Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp2s0     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                        Master:
bridge(UP)
```

```
DN     swp2s1    N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp2s2    N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp2s3    N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
UP     swp3      100G  9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
UP     swp4      100G  9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp5      N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp6      N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp7      N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp8      N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp9      N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp10     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp11     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp12     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp13     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
DN     swp14     N/A   9216   Trunk/L2                                Master:
bridge(UP)
UP     swp15     N/A   9216   BondMember                              Master:
bond_15_16(UP)
UP     swp16     N/A   9216   BondMember                              Master:
bond_15_16(UP)
...
...

admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show roce config
RoCE mode.......... lossless
Congestion Control:
  Enabled SPs.... 0 2 5
  Mode........... ECN
  Min Threshold.. 150 KB
  Max Threshold.. 1500 KB
PFC:
  Status......... enabled
```

```
  Enabled SPs.... 2 5
  Interfaces......... swp10-16,swp1s0-3,swp2s0-3,swp3-9

DSCP                     802.1p  switch-priority
-----------------------  ------  ---------------
0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7               0                0
8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15         1                1
16 17 18 19 20 21 22 23       2                2
24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31       3                3
32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39       4                4
40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47       5                5
48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55       6                6
56 57 58 59 60 61 62 63       7                7

switch-priority  TC  ETS
---------------  --  --------
0 1 3 4 6 7       0  DWRR 28%
2                 2  DWRR 28%
5                 5  DWRR 43%
```

5. Verify information for the transceiver in the interface:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show interface pluggables
Interface  Identifier     Vendor Name  Vendor PN        Vendor SN
    Vendor Rev
---------  -------------  -----------  ---------------
--------------  ----------
swp3       0x11 (QSFP28)  Amphenol     112-00574
APF20379253516  B0
swp4       0x11 (QSFP28)  AVAGO        332-00440        AF1815GU05Z
    A0
swp15      0x11 (QSFP28)  Amphenol     112-00573
APF21109348001  B0
swp16      0x11 (QSFP28)  Amphenol     112-00573
APF21109347895  B0
```

6. Verify that the nodes each have a connection to each switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost             RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ---------------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    sw1                    e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    sw2                    e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw13                   swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw14                   swp16
```

7. Verify the health of cluster ports on the cluster.
   a. Verify that e0d ports are up and healthy across all nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

   b. Verify the switch health from the cluster (this might not show switch sw2, since LIFs are not homed on e0d).

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------- ----------
node1/lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3      -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3      -

node2/lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4      -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4      -


cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address
Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
-----
sw1                         cluster-network    10.233.205.90
MSN2100-CB2RC
     Serial Number: MNXXXXXXGD
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cumulus Linux version 4.4.3 running on
Mellanox
                    Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
    Version Source: LLDP

sw2                         cluster-network    10.233.205.91
MSN2100-CB2RC
     Serial Number: MNCXXXXXXGS
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cumulus Linux version 4.4.3 running on
Mellanox
                    Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
    Version Source: LLDP
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Display the available interfaces on the SN2100 switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface
Interface     MTU   Speed State Remote Host          Remote Port-
Type      Summary
------------- ----- ----- ----- ------------------- ------------
--------- -------------
+ cluster_isl 9216  200G  up
bond
+ eth0        1500  100M  up    mgmt-sw1             Eth105/1/14
eth       IP Address: 10.231.80 206/22
  eth0
IP Address: fd20:8b1e:f6ff:fe31:4a0e/64
+ lo          65536       up
loopback  IP Address: 127.0.0.1/8
  lo
IP Address: ::1/128
+ swp1s0      9216 10G    up cluster01               e0b
swp
.
.
.
+ swp15      9216 100G    up sw2                     swp15
swp
+ swp16      9216 100G    up sw2                     swp16
swp
```

2. Copy the RCF python script to the switch.

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ pwd
/home/cumulus
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt: /tmp$ scp <user>@<host:/<path>/MSN2100-RCF-
v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP ./
ssologin@10.233.204.71's password:
MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP         100% 8607
111.2KB/s         00:00
```

While `scp` is used in the example, you can use your preferred method of file transfer.

3. Apply the RCF python script **MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP**.

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:/tmp$ sudo python3 MSN2100-RCF-v1.x-Cluster-HA-
Breakout-LLDP
[sudo] password for cumulus:
.
.
Step 1: Creating the banner file
Step 2: Registering banner message
Step 3: Updating the MOTD file
Step 4: Ensuring passwordless use of cl-support command by admin
Step 5: Disabling apt-get
Step 6: Creating the interfaces
Step 7: Adding the interface config
Step 8: Disabling cdp
Step 9: Adding the lldp config
Step 10: Adding the RoCE base config
Step 11: Modifying RoCE Config
Step 12: Configure SNMP
Step 13: Reboot the switch
```

The RCF script completes the steps listed in the example above.

In step 3 **Updating the MOTD file** above, the command `cat /etc/issue` is run. This allows you to verify the RCF filename, RCF version, ports to use, and other important information in the RCF banner.

For example:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ cat /etc/issue
*********************************************************************
**********
*
* NetApp Reference Configuration File (RCF)
* Switch       : Mellanox MSN2100
* Filename     : MSN2100-RCF-1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP
* Release Date : 13-02-2023
* Version      : 1.x-Cluster-HA-Breakout-LLDP
*
* Port Usage:
* Port 1      : 4x10G Breakout mode for Cluster+HA Ports, swp1s0-3
* Port 2      : 4x25G Breakout mode for Cluster+HA Ports, swp2s0-3
* Ports 3-14  : 40/100G for Cluster+HA Ports, swp3-14
* Ports 15-16 : 100G Cluster ISL Ports, swp15-16
*
* NOTE:
*   RCF manually sets swp1s0-3 link speed to 10000 and
*   auto-negotiation to off for Intel 10G
*   RCF manually sets swp2s0-3 link speed to 25000 and
*   auto-negotiation to off for Chelsio 25G
*
*
* IMPORTANT: Perform the following steps to ensure proper RCF
installation:
* - Copy the RCF file to /tmp
* - Ensure the file has execute permission
* - From /tmp run the file as sudo python3 <filename>
*
*********************************************************************
**********
```

For any RCF python script issues that cannot be corrected, contact NetApp Support for assistance.

4. Verify the configuration after the reboot:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface
Interface   MTU   Speed State Remote Host Remote Port Type Summary
----------- ----- ----- ----- ----------- ----------- ----
-------------
+ cluster_isl 9216 200G up bond
+ eth0 1500 100M up RTP-LF01-410G38.rtp.eng.netapp.com Eth105/1/14
eth IP Address: 10.231.80.206/22
```

```
eth0 IP Address: fd20:8b1e:b255:85a0:bace:f6ff:fe31:4a0e/64
+ lo 65536 up loopback IP Address: 127.0.0.1/8
lo IP Address: ::1/128
+ swp1s0 9216 10G up cumulus1 e0b swp
.
.
.
+ swp15 9216 100G up cumulus swp15 swp

admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface
Interface     MTU   Speed State Remote Host          Remote Port-
Type      Summary
------------- ----- ----- ----- ------------------- ------------
--------- -------------
+ cluster_isl 9216  200G  up
bond
+ eth0        1500  100M  up    mgmt-sw1             Eth105/1/14
eth       IP Address: 10.231.80 206/22
  eth0
IP Address: fd20:8b1e:f6ff:fe31:4a0e/64
+ lo          65536       up
loopback  IP Address: 127.0.0.1/8
  lo
IP Address: ::1/128
+ swp1s0      9216 10G    up cluster01                 e0b
swp
.
.
.
+ swp15      9216 100G    up sw2                       swp15
swp
+ swp16      9216 100G    up sw2                       swp16
swp

admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show qos roce
                   operational  applied   description
-----------------  -----------  ---------
----------------------------------------
enable             on                     Turn feature 'on' or
'off'. This feature is disabled by default.
mode               lossless     lossless  Roce Mode
congestion-control
  congestion-mode   ECN,RED                Congestion config mode
  enabled-tc        0,2,5                  Congestion config enabled
Traffic Class
  max-threshold     195.31 KB              Congestion config max-
```

```
threshold
  min-threshold     39.06 KB              Congestion config min-
threshold
  probability       100
lldp-app-tlv
  priority          3                     switch-priority of roce
  protocol-id       4791                  L4 port number
  selector          UDP                   L4 protocol
pfc
  pfc-priority      2, 5                  switch-prio on which PFC
is enabled
  rx-enabled        enabled               PFC Rx Enabled status
  tx-enabled        enabled               PFC Tx Enabled status
trust
  trust-mode        pcp,dscp              Trust Setting on the port
for packet classification

RoCE PCP/DSCP->SP mapping configurations
===========================================
        pcp  dscp                     switch-prio
    --  ---  -----------------------  -----------
    0   0    0,1,2,3,4,5,6,7          0
    1   1    8,9,10,11,12,13,14,15    1
    2   2    16,17,18,19,20,21,22,23  2
    3   3    24,25,26,27,28,29,30,31  3
    4   4    32,33,34,35,36,37,38,39  4
    5   5    40,41,42,43,44,45,46,47  5
    6   6    48,49,50,51,52,53,54,55  6
    7   7    56,57,58,59,60,61,62,63  7

RoCE SP->TC mapping and ETS configurations
=============================================
        switch-prio  traffic-class  scheduler-weight
    --  -----------  -------------  ----------------
    0   0            0              DWRR-28%
    1   1            0              DWRR-28%
    2   2            2              DWRR-28%
    3   3            0              DWRR-28%
    4   4            0              DWRR-28%
    5   5            5              DWRR-43%
    6   6            0              DWRR-28%
    7   7            0              DWRR-28%

RoCE pool config
===================
        name                   mode     size  switch-priorities
```

```
traffic-class
    --  --------------------  -------  ----  ----------------
-------------
    0   lossy-default-ingress  Dynamic  50%   0,1,3,4,6,7        -
    1   roce-reserved-ingress  Dynamic  50%   2,5                -
    2   lossy-default-egress   Dynamic  50%   -                  0
    3   roce-reserved-egress   Dynamic  inf   -                  2,5

Exception List
=================
        description
    --
-----------------------------------------------------------------
---…
    1   RoCE PFC Priority Mismatch.Expected pfc-priority: 3.
    2   Congestion Config TC Mismatch.Expected enabled-tc: 0,3.
    3   Congestion Config mode Mismatch.Expected congestion-mode:
ECN.
    4   Congestion Config min-threshold Mismatch.Expected min-
threshold: 150000.
    5   Congestion Config max-threshold Mismatch.Expected max-
threshold:
        1500000.
    6   Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio0.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    7   Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio1.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    8   Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio2.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    9   Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio3.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    10  Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio4.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    11  Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio5.
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    12  Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio6.
        Expected scheduler-weight: strict-priority.
    13  Scheduler config mismatch for traffic-class mapped to
switch-prio7.
```

```
        Expected scheduler-weight: DWRR-50%.
    14  Invalid reserved config for ePort.TC[2].Expected 0 Got 1024
    15  Invalid reserved config for ePort.TC[5].Expected 0 Got 1024
    16  Invalid traffic-class mapping for switch-priority 2.Expected
0 Got 2
    17  Invalid traffic-class mapping for switch-priority 3.Expected
3 Got 0
    18  Invalid traffic-class mapping for switch-priority 5.Expected
0 Got 5
    19  Invalid traffic-class mapping for switch-priority 6.Expected
6 Got 0
Incomplete Command: set interface swp3-16 link fast-linkupp3-16 link
fast-linkup
Incomplete Command: set interface swp3-16 link fast-linkupp3-16 link
fast-linkup
Incomplete Command: set interface swp3-16 link fast-linkupp3-16 link
fast-linkup
```

> The exceptions listed do not affect performance and can be safely ignored.

5. Verify information for the transceiver in the interface:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface --view=pluggables
Interface  Identifier     Vendor Name  Vendor PN        Vendor
SN       Vendor Rev
---------  -------------  -----------  ---------------
--------------  ----------
swp1s0     0x00 None
swp1s1     0x00 None
swp1s2     0x00 None
swp1s3     0x00 None
swp2s0     0x11 (QSFP28)  CISCO-LEONI  L45593-D278-D20
LCC2321GTTJ     00
swp2s1     0x11 (QSFP28)  CISCO-LEONI  L45593-D278-D20
LCC2321GTTJ     00
swp2s2     0x11 (QSFP28)  CISCO-LEONI  L45593-D278-D20
LCC2321GTTJ     00
swp2s3     0x11 (QSFP28)  CISCO-LEONI  L45593-D278-D20
LCC2321GTTJ     00
swp3       0x00 None
swp4       0x00 None
swp5       0x00 None
swp6       0x00 None
.
.
.
swp15      0x11 (QSFP28)  Amphenol     112-00595
APF20279210117  B0
swp16      0x11 (QSFP28)  Amphenol     112-00595
APF20279210166  B0
```

6. Verify that the nodes each have a connection to each switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface --view=lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost              RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ----------------------- -----------
eth0       100M   Mgmt        mgmt-sw1                Eth110/1/29
swp2s1     25G    Trunk/L2    node1                   e0a
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw2                     swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw2                     swp16
```

7. Verify the health of cluster ports on the cluster.

   a. Verify that e0d ports are up and healthy across all nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -role cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

b. Verify the switch health from the cluster (this might not show switch sw2, since LIFs are not homed on e0d).

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------- ----------
node1/lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3      -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3      -

node2/lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4      -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4      -


cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show -is-monitoring-enabled
-operational true
Switch                      Type               Address
Model
--------------------------- ------------------ ----------------
-----
sw1                         cluster-network    10.233.205.90
MSN2100-CB2RC
     Serial Number: MNXXXXXXGD
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cumulus Linux version 5.4.0 running on
Mellanox
                    Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
    Version Source: LLDP

sw2                         cluster-network    10.233.205.91
MSN2100-CB2RC
     Serial Number: MNCXXXXXXGS
      Is Monitored: true
            Reason: None
  Software Version: Cumulus Linux version 5.4.0 running on
Mellanox
                    Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
    Version Source: LLDP
```

What’s next?

Enable log collection

Ethernet Switch Health Monitoring log collection

The Ethernet switch health monitor (CSHM) is responsible for ensuring the operational health of Cluster and Storage network switches and collecting switch logs for debugging purposes. This procedure guides you through the process of setting up and starting the collection of detailed **Support** logs from the switch and starts an hourly collection of **Periodic** data that is collected by AutoSupport.

Before you begin

- The user for log collection must be specified when the Reference Configuration File (RCF) is applied. By default, this user is set to 'admin'. If you wish to use a different user, you must specify this in the *# SHM User*s section of the RCF.
- The user must have access to the **nv show** commands. This can be added by running `sudo adduser USER nv show` and replacing USER with the user for log collection.
- Switch health monitoring must be enabled for the switch. Verify this by ensuring the `Is Monitored:` field is set to **true** in the output of the `system switch ethernet show` command.

Steps

1. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   ```
   system switch ethernet log setup-password
   ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

2. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed `Support` logs and an hourly collection of `Periodic` data.

   ```
   system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
   ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

> If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

Troubleshooting

If you encounter any of the following error statuses reported by the log collection feature (visible in the output of `system switch ethernet log show`), try the corresponding debug steps:

Log collection error status	Resolution
RSA keys not present	Regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Contact NetApp support.
switch password error	Verify credentials, test SSH connectivity, and regenerate ONTAP SSH keys. Review switch documentation or contact NetApp support for instructions.
ECDSA keys not present for FIPS	If FIPS mode is enabled, ECDSA keys need to be generated on the switch before retrying.
pre-existing log found	Remove the previous log collection directory and '.tar' file located at `/tmp/shm_log` on the switch.

switch dump log error	Ensure the switch user has log collection permissions. Refer to the prerequisites above.

Configure SNMPv3

Follow this procedure to configure SNMPv3, which supports Ethernet switch health monitoring (CSHM).

About this task

The following commands configure an SNMPv3 username on NVIDIA SN2100 switches:

- For **no authentication**:
  `net add snmp-server username SNMPv3_USER auth-none`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication**:
  `net add snmp-server username SNMPv3_USER [auth-md5|auth-sha] AUTH-PASSWORD`
- For **MD5/SHA authentication with AES/DES encryption**:
  `net add snmp-server username SNMPv3_USER [auth-md5|auth-sha] AUTH-PASSWORD [encrypt-aes|encrypt-des] PRIV-PASSWORD`

The following command configures an SNMPv3 username on the ONTAP side:
`cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name SNMPv3_USER -application snmp -authentication-method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress ADDRESS`

The following command establishes the SNMPv3 username with CSHM:
`cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device DEVICE -snmp-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username SNMPv3_USER`

Steps

1. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the switch to use authentication and encryption:

```
net show snmp status
```

Show example

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show snmp status
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Daemon.
---------------------------------  ----------------
Current Status                     active (running)
Reload Status                      enabled
Listening IP Addresses             all vrf mgmt
Main snmpd PID                     4318
Version 1 and 2c Community String  Configured
Version 3 Usernames                Not Configured
---------------------------------  ----------------
cumulus@sw1:~$
cumulus@sw1:~$ net add snmp-server username SNMPv3User auth-md5
<password> encrypt-aes <password>
cumulus@sw1:~$ net commit
--- /etc/snmp/snmpd.conf        2020-08-02 21:09:34.686949282 +0000
+++ /run/nclu/snmp/snmpd.conf   2020-08-11 00:13:51.826126655 +0000
@@ -1,26 +1,28 @@
 # Auto-generated config file: do not edit. #
 agentaddress udp:@mgmt:161
 agentxperms 777 777 snmp snmp
 agentxsocket /var/agentx/master
 createuser _snmptrapusernameX
+createuser SNMPv3User MD5 <password> AES <password>
 ifmib_max_num_ifaces 500
 iquerysecname _snmptrapusernameX
 master agentx
 monitor -r 60 -o laNames -o laErrMessage "laTable" laErrorFlag != 0
 pass -p 10 1.3.6.1.2.1.1.1 /usr/share/snmp/sysDescr_pass.py
 pass_persist 1.2.840.10006.300.43
/usr/share/snmp/ieee8023_lag_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.2.1.17 /usr/share/snmp/bridge_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.2.1.31.1.1.1.18
/usr/share/snmp/snmpifAlias_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.2.1.47 /usr/share/snmp/entity_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.2.1.99 /usr/share/snmp/entity_sensor_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.1 /usr/share/snmp/resq_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.2
/usr/share/snmp/cl_drop_cntrs_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.3 /usr/share/snmp/cl_poe_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.4 /usr/share/snmp/bgpun_pp.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.5 /usr/share/snmp/cumulus-status.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.6 /usr/share/snmp/cumulus-sensor.py
 pass_persist 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310.7 /usr/share/snmp/vrf_bgpun_pp.py
+rocommunity cshm1! default
```

```
 rouser _snmptrapusernameX
+rouser SNMPv3User priv
 sysobjectid 1.3.6.1.4.1.40310
 sysservices 72
-rocommunity cshm1! default


net add/del commands since the last "net commit"
================================================

User        Timestamp                   Command
----------  --------------------------
---------------------------------------------------------------------
-----
SNMPv3User  2020-08-11 00:13:51.826987  net add snmp-server username
SNMPv3User auth-md5 <password> encrypt-aes <password>

cumulus@sw1:~$
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show snmp status
Simple Network Management Protocol (SNMP) Daemon.
---------------------------------  ----------------
Current Status                     active (running)
Reload Status                      enabled
Listening IP Addresses             all vrf mgmt
Main snmpd PID                     24253
Version 1 and 2c Community String  Configured
Version 3 Usernames                Configured     <---- Configured
here
---------------------------------  ----------------
cumulus@sw1:~$
```

2. Set up the SNMPv3 user on the ONTAP side:

```
security login create -user-or-group-name SNMPv3User -application snmp
-authentication-method usm -remote-switch-ipaddress 10.231.80.212
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> security login create -user-or-group-name SNMPv3User
-application snmp -authentication-method usm -remote-switch
-ipaddress 10.231.80.212

Enter the authoritative entity's EngineID [remote EngineID]:

Which authentication protocol do you want to choose (none, md5, sha,
sha2-256)
[none]: md5

Enter the authentication protocol password (minimum 8 characters
long):

Enter the authentication protocol password again:

Which privacy protocol do you want to choose (none, des, aes128)
[none]: aes128

Enter privacy protocol password (minimum 8 characters long):
Enter privacy protocol password again:
```

3. Configure CSHM to monitor with the new SNMPv3 user:

```
system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1 (b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -instance
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -instance
                                   Device Name: sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)
                                    IP Address: 10.231.80.212
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv2c
                                 Is Discovered: true
DEPRECATED-Community String or SNMPv3 Username: -
           Community String or SNMPv3 Username: cshm1!
                                  Model Number: MSN2100-CB2FC
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: Cumulus Linux
version 4.4.3 running on Mellanox Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None
                      Source Of Switch Version: LLDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: MT2110X06399  <----
serial number to check
                                   RCF Version: MSN2100-RCF-v1.9X6-
Cluster-LLDP Aug-18-2022

cluster1::*>
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet modify -device "sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -snmp-version SNMPv3 -community-or-username
SNMPv3User
```

4. Verify that the serial number to be queried with the newly created SNMPv3 user is the same as detailed in the previous step once the CSHM polling period has completed.

```
system switch ethernet polling-interval show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet polling-interval show
         Polling Interval (in minutes): 5

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet show-all -device "sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)" -instance
                                   Device Name: sw1
(b8:59:9f:09:7c:22)
                                    IP Address: 10.231.80.212
                                  SNMP Version: SNMPv3
                                 Is Discovered: true
DEPRECATED-Community String or SNMPv3 Username: -
           Community String or SNMPv3 Username: SNMPv3User
                                  Model Number: MSN2100-CB2FC
                                Switch Network: cluster-network
                              Software Version: Cumulus Linux
version 4.4.3 running on Mellanox Technologies Ltd. MSN2100
                     Reason For Not Monitoring: None
                      Source Of Switch Version: LLDP
                                Is Monitored ?: true
                   Serial Number of the Device: MT2110X06399  <----
serial number to check
                                   RCF Version: MSN2100-RCF-v1.9X6-
Cluster-LLDP Aug-18-2022
```

Upgrade Cumulus Linux versions

Complete the following procedure to upgrade your Cumulus Linux version as required.

What you'll need

- Intermediate-level Linux knowledge.
- Familiarity with basic text editing, UNIX file permissions, and process monitoring. A variety of text editors are pre-installed, including `vi` and `nano`.
- Access to a Linux or UNIX shell. If you are running Windows, use a Linux environment as your command line tool for interacting with Cumulus Linux.
- The baud rate requirement is set to 115200 on the serial console switch for NVIDIA SN2100 switch console access, as follows:
    - 115200 baud
    - 8 data bits
    - 1 stop bit
    - parity: none

◦ flow control: none

About this task

Be aware of the following:

> Each time Cumulus Linux is upgraded, the entire file system structure is erased and rebuilt. Your existing configuration will be erased. You must save and record your switch configuration before updating Cumulus Linux.

> The default password for the cumulus user account is **cumulus**. The first time you log into Cumulus Linux, you must change this default password. You must update any automation scripts before installing a new image. Cumulus Linux provides command line options to change the default password automatically during the installation process.

Example 4. Steps

From Cumulus Linux 4.4.x to Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Check the current Cumulus Linux version and connected ports:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show system
Hostname......... cumulus
Build............ Cumulus Linux 4.4.3
Uptime........... 0:08:20.860000
Model............ Mlnx X86
CPU.............. x86_64 Intel Atom C2558 2.40GHz
Memory........... 8GB
Disk............. 14.7GB
ASIC............. Mellanox Spectrum MT52132
Ports............ 16 x 100G-QSFP28
Part Number...... MSN2100-CB2FC
Serial Number.... MT2105T05177
Platform Name.... x86_64-mlnx_x86-r0
Product Name..... MSN2100
ONIE Version..... 2019.11-5.2.0020-115200
Base MAC Address. 04:3F:72:43:92:80
Manufacturer..... Mellanox

admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ net show interface

State  Name    Spd   MTU    Mode         LLDP
Summary
-----  ------  ----  -----  ----------  ----------------------
--------------------
.
.
UP     swp1    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node1 (e5b)
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp2    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node2 (e5b)
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp3    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    SHFFG1826000112 (e0b)
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    SHFFG1826000112 (e0b)
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp5    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    SHFFG1826000102 (e0b)
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp6    100G  9216   Trunk/L2    SHFFG1826000102 (e0b)
Master: bridge(UP))
.
.
```

2. Download the Cumulux Linux 5.x image:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin/
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Fetching installer:
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin
Downloading URL:
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin
# 100.0%
Success: HTTP download complete.
EFI variables are not supported on this system
Warning: SecureBoot is not available.
Image is signed.
.
.
.
Staging installer image...done.
WARNING:
WARNING: Activating staged installer requested.
WARNING: This action will wipe out all system data.
WARNING: Make sure to back up your data.
WARNING:
Are you sure (y/N)? y
Activating staged installer...done.
Reboot required to take effect.
```

3. Reboot the switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin/
 sudo reboot
```

4. Change the password:

```
cumulus login: cumulus
Password:
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
enforced)
Changing password for cumulus.
Current password: cumulus
New password: <new_password>
Retype new password: <new_password>
Linux cumulus 5.10.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Debian 5.10.162-1+cl5.4.0u1
(2023-01-20) x86_64

Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

ZTP in progress. To disable, do 'ztp -d'
```

5. Check the Cumulus Linux version: `nv show system`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show system
           operational    applied
---------- -------------- ----------
hostname   cumulus        cumulus
build      Cumulus Linux 5.4.0
uptime     14:07:08
timezone   Etc/UTC
```

6. Change the hostname:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set system hostname sw1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
Warning: The following files have been changed since the last save,
and they WILL be overwritten.
- /etc/nsswitch.conf
- /etc/synced/synced.conf
.
.
```

7. Logout and log in to the switch again to see the updated switch name at the prompt:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ exit
logout

Debian GNU/Linux 10 cumulus ttyS0

cumulus login: cumulus
Password:
Last login: Tue Dec 15 21:43:13 UTC 2020 on ttyS0
Linux cumulus 5.10.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Debian 5.10.162-1+cl5.4.0u1
(2023-01-20) x86_64

Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)


ZTP in progress. To disable, do 'ztp -d'

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

8. Set the IP address:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip address 10.231.80.206
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip gateway 10.231.80.1
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
applied [rev_id: 2]
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ ip route show vrf mgmt
default via 10.231.80.1 dev eth0 proto kernel
unreachable default metric 4278198272
10.231.80.0/22 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.231.80.206
127.0.0.0/8 dev mgmt proto kernel scope link src 127.0.0.1
```

9. Create a new user and add this user to the `sudo` group. This user only becomes effective after the console/SSH session is restarted.

```
sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
```

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user 'admin' ...
Adding new user 'admin' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
Creating home directory '/home/admin' ...
Copying files from '/etc/skel' ...
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: password updated successfully
Changing the user information for admin
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default
Full Name []:
Room Number []:
Work Phone []:
Home Phone []:
Other []:
Is the information correct? [Y/n] y

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin sudo
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user `admin' to group `sudo' ...
Adding user admin to group sudo
Done.
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ exit
logout
Connection to 10.233.204.71 closed.

[admin@cycrh6svl01 ~]$ ssh admin@10.233.204.71
admin@10.233.204.71's password:
Linux sw1 4.19.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Cumulus 4.19.206-1+cl4.4.1u1
(2021-09-09) x86_64
Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

For support and online technical documentation, visit
http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/support

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a sublicense
from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the
mark on a world-wide basis.
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

10. Add additional user groups for the admin user to access `nv` commands:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin nvshow
     [sudo] password for cumulus:
     Adding user `admin' to group `nvshow' ...
     Adding user admin to group nvshow
     Done.
```

See NVIDIA User Accounts for more information.

From Cumulus Linux 5.x to Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Check the current Cumulus Linux version and connected ports:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show system
                    operational          applied
------------------- -------------------- -----------------
hostname            cumulus              cumulus
build               Cumulus Linux 5.3.0
uptime              6 days, 8:37:36
timezone            Etc/UTC

admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv show interface
Interface     MTU   Speed State Remote Host         Remote Port-
Type      Summary
------------- ----- ----- ----- ------------------- ------------
--------- -------------
+ cluster_isl 9216  200G  up
bond
+ eth0        1500  100M  up    mgmt-sw1            Eth105/1/14
eth       IP Address: 10.231.80 206/22
  eth0
IP Address: fd20:8b1e:f6ff:fe31:4a0e/64
+ lo          65536       up
loopback  IP Address: 127.0.0.1/8
  lo
IP Address: ::1/128
+ swp1s0      9216 10G    up cluster01                e0b
swp
.
.
.
+ swp15      9216 100G    up sw2                      swp15
swp
+ swp16      9216 100G    up sw2                      swp16
swp
```

2. Download the Cumulux Linux 5.4.0 image:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo onie-install -a -i
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin/
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Fetching installer:
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin
Downloading URL:
http://10.60.132.97/x/eng/testbedN,svl/nic/files/NVIDIA/cumulus-
linux-5.4.0-mlx-amd64.bin
# 100.0%
Success: HTTP download complete.
EFI variables are not supported on this system
Warning: SecureBoot is not available.
Image is signed.
.
.
.
Staging installer image...done.
WARNING:
WARNING: Activating staged installer requested.
WARNING: This action will wipe out all system data.
WARNING: Make sure to back up your data.
WARNING:
Are you sure (y/N)? y
Activating staged installer...done.
Reboot required to take effect.
```

3. Reboot the switch:

```
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo reboot
```

4. Change the password:

```
cumulus login: cumulus
Password:
You are required to change your password immediately (administrator
enforced)
Changing password for cumulus.
Current password: cumulus
New password: <new_password>
Retype new password: <new_password>
Linux cumulus 5.10.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Debian 5.10.162-1+cl5.4.0u1
(2023-01-20) x86_64

Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

ZTP in progress. To disable, do 'ztp -d'
```

5. Check the Cumulus Linux version: `nv show system`

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv show system
operational    applied
-------------- ----------------
hostname       cumulus cumulus
build          Cumulus Linux 5.4.0
uptime         14:07:08
timezone       Etc/UTC
```

6. Change the hostname:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv set system hostname sw1
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
Warning: The following files have been changed since the last save,
and they WILL be overwritten.
- /etc/nsswitch.conf
- /etc/synced/synced.conf
.
.
```

7. Logout and log in again to the switch to see the updated switch name at the prompt:

```
cumulus@cumulus:mgmt:~$ exit
logout

Debian GNU/Linux 10 cumulus ttyS0

cumulus login: cumulus
Password:
Last login: Tue Dec 15 21:43:13 UTC 2020 on ttyS0
Linux cumulus 5.10.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Debian 5.10.162-1+cl5.4.0u1
(2023-01-20) x86_64

Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)


ZTP in progress. To disable, do 'ztp -d'

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

8. Set the IP address:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip address 10.231.80.206
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv set interface eth0 ip gateway 10.231.80.1
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ nv config apply
applied [rev_id: 2]
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ ip route show vrf mgmt
default via 10.231.80.1 dev eth0 proto kernel
unreachable default metric 4278198272
10.231.80.0/22 dev eth0 proto kernel scope link src 10.231.80.206
127.0.0.0/8 dev mgmt proto kernel scope link src 127.0.0.1
```

9. Create a new user and add this user to the `sudo` group. This user only becomes effective after the console/SSH session is restarted.

```
sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
```

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser --ingroup netedit admin
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user 'admin' ...
Adding new user 'admin' (1001) with group `netedit' ...
Creating home directory '/home/admin' ...
Copying files from '/etc/skel' ...
New password:
Retype new password:
passwd: password updated successfully
Changing the user information for admin
Enter the new value, or press ENTER for the default
Full Name []:
Room Number []:
Work Phone []:
Home Phone []:
Other []:
Is the information correct? [Y/n] y

cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin sudo
[sudo] password for cumulus:
Adding user `admin' to group `sudo' ...
Adding user admin to group sudo
Done.
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ exit
logout
Connection to 10.233.204.71 closed.

[admin@cycrh6svl01 ~]$ ssh admin@10.233.204.71
admin@10.233.204.71's password:
Linux sw1 4.19.0-cl-1-amd64 #1 SMP Cumulus 4.19.206-1+cl4.4.1u1
(2021-09-09) x86_64
Welcome to NVIDIA Cumulus (R) Linux (R)

For support and online technical documentation, visit
http://www.cumulusnetworks.com/support

The registered trademark Linux (R) is used pursuant to a sublicense
from LMI, the exclusive licensee of Linus Torvalds, owner of the
mark on a world-wide basis.
admin@sw1:mgmt:~$
```

10. Add additional user groups for the admin user to access `nv` commands:

```
cumulus@sw1:mgmt:~$ sudo adduser admin nvshow
     [sudo] password for cumulus:
     Adding user `admin' to group `nvshow' ...
     Adding user admin to group nvshow
     Done.
```

See NVIDIA User Accounts for more information.

What's next?

Install the Reference Configuration File (RCF) script.

Migrate switches

Migrate CN1610 cluster switches to NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches

You can migrate NetApp CN1610 cluster switches for an ONTAP cluster to NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches. This is a nondisruptive procedure.

Review requirements

You must be aware of certain configuration information, port connections and cabling requirements when you are replacing NetApp CN1610 cluster switches with NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches. See Overview of installation and configuration for NVIDIA SN2100 switches.

Supported switches

The following cluster switches are supported:

- NetApp CN1610
- NVIDIA SN2100

For details of supported ports and their configurations, see the Hardware Universe.

What you'll need

Verify that you meet the following requirements for you configuration:

- The existing cluster is correctly set up and functioning.
- All cluster ports are in the **up** state to ensure nondisruptive operations.
- The NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches are configured and operating under the correct version of Cumulus Linux installed with the reference configuration file (RCF) applied.
- The existing cluster network configuration has the following:
  - A redundant and fully functional NetApp cluster using CN1610 switches.
  - Management connectivity and console access to both the CN1610 switches and the new switches.
  - All cluster LIFs in the up state with the cluster LIfs on their home ports.
  - ISL ports enabled and cabled between the CN1610 switches and between the new switches.
- Some of the ports are configured on NVIDIA SN2100 switches to run at 40GbE or 100GbE.

- You have planned, migrated, and documented 40GbE and 100GbE connectivity from nodes to NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches.

Migrate the switches

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The existing CN1610 cluster switches are *c1* and *c2*.
- The new NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches are *sw1* and *sw2*.
- The nodes are *node1* and *node2*.
- The cluster LIFs are *node1_clus1* and *node1_clus2* on node 1, and *node2_clus1* and *node2_clus2* on node 2 respectively.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports used in this procedure are *e3a* and *e3b*.
- Breakout ports take the format: swp[port]s[breakout port 0-3]. For example, four breakout ports on swp1 are *swp1s0*, *swp1s1*, *swp1s2*, and *swp1s3*.

About this task

This procedure covers the following scenario:

- Switch c2 is replaced by switch sw2 first.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - The cabling between the nodes and c2 is then disconnected from c2 and reconnected to sw2.
- Switch c1 is replaced by switch sw1.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - The cabling between the nodes and c1 is then disconnected from c1 and reconnected to sw1.

> ⓘ No operational inter-switch link (ISL) is needed during this procedure. This is by design because RCF version changes can affect ISL connectivity temporarily. To ensure non-disruptive cluster operations, the following procedure migrates all of the cluster LIFs to the operational partner switch while performing the steps on the target switch.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
   ```

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

3. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

```
network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false
```

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Determine the administrative or operational status for each cluster interface.

   Each port should display up for `Link` and `healthy` for `Health Status`.

   a. Display the network port attributes:

   ```
   network port show -ipspace Cluster
   ```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

b. Display information about the LIFs and their designated home nodes:

`network interface show -vserver Cluster`

Each LIF should display `up/up` for `Status Admin/Oper` and `true` for `Is Home`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- -----------  ---------- ------------------
----------- ------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

2. The cluster ports on each node are connected to existing cluster switches in the following way (from the nodes' perspective) using the command:

   `network device-discovery show -protocol`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol cdp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /cdp
            e3a    c1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    0/1              -
            e3b    c2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    0/1              -
node2      /cdp
            e3a    c1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    0/2              -
            e3b    c2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    0/2              -
```

3. The cluster ports and switches are connected in the following way (from the switches' perspective) using the command:

   `show cdp neighbors`

Show example

```
c1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 0/1           124     H          AFF-A400
e3a
node2                 0/2           124     H          AFF-A400
e3a
c2                    0/13          179     S I s      CN1610
0/13
c2                    0/14          175     S I s      CN1610
0/14
c2                    0/15          179     S I s      CN1610
0/15
c2                    0/16          175     S I s      CN1610
0/16

c2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute


Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 0/1           124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
node2                 0/2           124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
c1                    0/13          175    S I s       CN1610
0/13
c1                    0/14          175    S I s       CN1610
0/14
c1                    0/15          175    S I s       CN1610
0/15
c1                    0/16          175    S I s       CN1610
0/16
```

4. Verify that the cluster network has full connectivity:

`cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2

Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1     e3a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1     e3b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2     e3a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2     e3b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

5. On switch c2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(c2)# configure
(c2)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/12
(c2)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# shutdown
(c2)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# exit
(c2)(Config)# exit
(c2)#
```

6. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch c2 to the new switch sw2, using appropriate cabling supported by NVIDIA SN2100.

7. Display the network port attributes:

   `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

8. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

   `network device-discovery show -protocol`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    c1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   0/1              -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3             -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    c1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   0/2              -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4             -
```

9. On switch sw2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

`net show interface`

Show example

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name         Spd   MTU    Mode         LLDP
Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3         100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4         100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
```

10. On switch c1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(c1)# configure
(c1)(Config)# interface 0/1-0/12
(c1)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# shutdown
(c1)(Interface 0/1-0/12)# exit
(c1)(Config)# exit
(c1)#
```

11. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch c1 to the new switch sw1, using appropriate cabling supported by NVIDIA SN2100.
12. Verify the final configuration of the cluster:

    `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

    Each port should display `up` for `Link` and `healthy` for `Health Status`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

13. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

    `network device-discovery show -protocol`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp

Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3           -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3           -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4           -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4           -
```

14. On switches sw1 and sw2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

    `net show interface`

Show example

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show interface

State  Name          Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP
Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3          100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3a
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4          100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3a
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15         100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16         100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)


cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name          Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP
Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
-----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3          100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4          100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15         100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16         100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
```

15. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

    `net show lldp`

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost          RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ------------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1               e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2               e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw2                 swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw2                 swp16

cumulus@sw2:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost          RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ------------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1               e3b
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2               e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw1                 swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw1                 swp16
```

Step 3: Complete the procedure

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
true
```

2. Verify that all cluster network LIFs are back on their home ports:

```
network interface show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

3. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
sw1
sw2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: sw1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: sw2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

4. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log show
Log Collection Enabled: true

Index  Switch                       Log Timestamp        Status
------ ---------------------------- -------------------  ---------

1      cs1  (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)     4/29/2022 03:05:25   complete
2      cs2  (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)     4/29/2022 03:07:42   complete
```

If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

5. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   `set -privilege admin`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

Migrate from a Cisco cluster switch to a NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switch

You can migrate Cisco cluster switches for an ONTAP cluster to NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches. This is a nondisruptive procedure.

Review requirements

You must be aware of certain configuration information, port connections and cabling requirements when you are replacing some older Cisco cluster switches with NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches. See Overview of installation and configuration for NVIDIA SN2100 switches.

Supported switches

The following Cisco cluster switches are supported:

- Nexus 9336C-FX2
- Nexus 92300YC
- Nexus 5596UP
- Nexus 3232C
- Nexus 3132Q-V

For details of supported ports and their configurations, see the Hardware Universe .

What you'll need

Ensure that:

- The existing cluster is properly set up and functioning.
- All cluster ports are in the **up** state to ensure nondisruptive operations.
- The NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches are configured and operating under the proper version of Cumulus Linux installed with the reference configuration file (RCF) applied.
- The existing cluster network configuration have the following:
  - A redundant and fully functional NetApp cluster using both older Cisco switches.
  - Management connectivity and console access to both the older Cisco switches and the new switches.
  - All cluster LIFs in the up state with the cluster LIfs are on their home ports.
  - ISL ports enabled and cabled between the older Cisco switches and between the new switches.
- Some of the ports are configured on NVIDIA SN2100 switches to run at 40 GbE or 100 GbE.
- You have planned, migrated, and documented 40 GbE and 100 GbE connectivity from nodes to NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches.

> ⓘ If you are changing the port speed of the e0a and e1a cluster ports on AFF A800 or AFF C800 systems, you might observe malformed packets being received after the speed conversion. See Bug 1570339 and the Knowledge Base article CRC errors on T6 ports after converting from 40GbE to 100GbE for guidance.

Migrate the switches

About the examples

In this procedure, Cisco Nexus 3232C cluster switches are used for example commands and outputs.

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The existing Cisco Nexus 3232C cluster switches are *c1* and *c2*.
- The new NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches are *sw1* and *sw2*.
- The nodes are *node1* and *node2*.
- The cluster LIFs are *node1_clus1* and *node1_clus2* on node 1, and *node2_clus1* and *node2_clus2* on node 2 respectively.
- The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
- The cluster ports used in this procedure are *e3a* and *e3b*.
- Breakout ports take the format: swp[port]s[breakout port 0-3]. For example, four breakout ports on swp1 are *swp1s0*, *swp1s1*, *swp1s2*, and *swp1s3*.

About this task

This procedure covers the following scenario:

- Switch c2 is replaced by switch sw2 first.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - Cabling between the nodes and c2 are then disconnected from c2 and reconnected to sw2.
- Switch c1 is replaced by switch sw1.
  - Shut down the ports to the cluster nodes. All ports must be shut down simultaneously to avoid cluster instability.
  - Cabling between the nodes and c1 are then disconnected from c1 and reconnected to sw1.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   ```
   system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh
   ```

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   ```
   set -privilege advanced
   ```

   The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

3. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

   ```
   network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false
   ```

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Determine the administrative or operational status for each cluster interface.

   Each port should display up for `Link` and healthy for `Health Status`.

a. Display the network port attributes:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

b. Display information about the logical interfaces and their designated home nodes:

```
network interface show -vserver Cluster
```

Each LIF should display `up/up` for `Status Admin/Oper` and true for `Is Home`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- -----------  ---------- ------------------
----------- ------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

2. The cluster ports on each node are connected to existing cluster switches in the following way (from the nodes' perspective):

`network device-discovery show -protocol lldp`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/       Local  Discovered
Protocol    Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    c1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    Eth1/1           -
            e3b    c2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    Eth1/1           -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    c1 (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)    Eth1/2           -
            e3b    c2 (6a:ad:4f:98:4c:a4)    Eth1/2           -
```

3. The cluster ports and switches are connected in the following way (from the switches' perspective):

`show cdp neighbors`

Show example

```
c1# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute

Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 Eth1/1         124   H           AFF-A400
e3a
node2                 Eth1/2         124   H           AFF-A400
e3a
c2                    Eth1/31        179   S I s       N3K-C3232C
Eth1/31
c2                    Eth1/32        175   S I s       N3K-C3232C
Eth1/32

c2# show cdp neighbors

Capability Codes: R - Router, T - Trans-Bridge, B - Source-Route-
Bridge
                  S - Switch, H - Host, I - IGMP, r - Repeater,
                  V - VoIP-Phone, D - Remotely-Managed-Device,
                  s - Supports-STP-Dispute


Device-ID             Local Intrfce Hldtme Capability  Platform
Port ID
node1                 Eth1/1        124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
node2                 Eth1/2        124    H           AFF-A400
e3b
c1                    Eth1/31       175    S I s       N3K-C3232C
Eth1/31
c1                    Eth1/32       175    S I s       N3K-C3232C
Eth1/32
```

4. Ensure that the cluster network has full connectivity:

`cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node2

Host is node2
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1     e3a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1     e3b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2     e3a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2     e3b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:
....
Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)
................
Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
    Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

5. On switch c2, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(c2)# configure
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.

(c2)(Config)# interface
(c2)(config-if-range)# shutdown <interface_list>
(c2)(config-if-range)# exit
(c2)(Config)# exit
(c2)#
```

6. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch c2 to the new switch sw2, using appropriate cabling supported by NVIDIA SN2100.
7. Display the network port attributes:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

8. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ----------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    c1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   Eth1/1             -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3               -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    c1  (6a:ad:4f:98:3b:3f)   Eth1/2             -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4               -
```

9. On switch sw2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

`net show interface`

Show example

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name         Spd   MTU    Mode         LLDP
Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3         100G  9216   Trunk/L2     e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4         100G  9216   Trunk/L2     e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15        100G  9216   BondMember   sw1  (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16        100G  9216   BondMember   sw1  (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
```

10. On switch c1, shut down the ports connected to the cluster ports of the nodes in order to fail over the cluster LIFs.

```
(c1)# configure
Enter configuration commands, one per line. End with CNTL/Z.

(c1)(Config)# interface
(c1)(config-if-range)# shutdown <interface_list>
(c1)(config-if-range)# exit
(c1)(Config)# exit
(c1)#
```

11. Move the node cluster ports from the old switch c1 to the new switch sw1, using appropriate cabling supported by NVIDIA SN2100.
12. Verify the final configuration of the cluster:

    `network port show -ipspace Cluster`

    Each port should display `up` for `Link` and healthy for `Health Status`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU    Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace    Broadcast Domain Link MTU    Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ---------- ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster    Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

13. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp

Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface
Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- --------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3           -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3           -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4           -
            e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4           -
```

14. On switches sw1 and sw2, verify that all node cluster ports are up:

`net show interface`

Show example

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show interface

State  Name        Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP
Summary
-----  ----------- ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3        100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3a
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4        100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3a
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15       100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16       100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)


cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name        Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP
Summary
-----  ----------- ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
-----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3        100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4        100G  9216   Trunk/L2    e3b
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15       100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16       100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
```

15. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

```
net show lldp
```

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost          RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ------------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1               e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2               e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw2                 swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw2                 swp16

cumulus@sw2:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost          RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  ------------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1               e3b
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2               e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw1                 swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw1                 swp16
```

Step 3: Complete the procedure

1. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
true
```

2. Verify that all cluster network LIFs are back on their home ports:

```
network interface show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
            node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
            node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

3. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

   `system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
sw1
sw2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: sw1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: sw2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

4. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device sw1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device sw2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log show
Log Collection Enabled: true

Index  Switch                       Log Timestamp        Status
------ ---------------------------- -------------------  ---------

1      sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)      4/29/2022 03:05:25   complete
2      sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)      4/29/2022 03:07:42   complete
```

> If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

5. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   `set -privilege admin`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

Migrate to a two-node switched cluster with NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches

If you have an existing two-node switchless cluster environment, you can migrate to a two-node switched cluster environment using NVIDIA SN2100 switches to enable you to scale beyond two nodes in the cluster.

The procedure you use depends on whether you have two dedicated cluster-network ports on each controller or a single cluster port on each controller. The process documented works for all nodes using optical or Twinax ports but is not supported on this switch if nodes are using onboard 10GBASE-T RJ45 ports for the cluster-network ports.

Review requirements

Two-node switchless configuration

Ensure that:

- The two-node switchless configuration are properly set up and functioning.
- The nodes are running ONTAP 9.10.1P3 and later.
- All cluster ports are in the **up** state.
- All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are in the **up** state and on their home ports.

NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switch configuration

Ensure that:

- Both switches have management network connectivity.
- There is console access to the cluster switches.
- NVIDIA SN2100 node-to-node switch and switch-to-switch connections use Twinax or fiber cables.

> See Review cabling and configuration considerations for caveats and further details. The Hardware Universe - Switches also contains more information about cabling.

- Inter-Switch Link (ISL) cables are connected to ports swp15 and swp16 on both NVIDIA SN2100 switches.
- Initial customization of both the SN2100 switches are completed, so that:
  - SN2100 switches are running the latest version of Cumulus Linux
  - Reference Configuration Files (RCFs) are applied to the switches
  - Any site customization, such as SMTP, SNMP, and SSH are configured on the new switches.

  The Hardware Universe contains the latest information about the actual cluster ports for your platforms.

Migrate the switches

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following cluster switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the SN2100 switches are *sw1* and *sw2*.
- The names of the cluster SVMs are *node1* and *node2*.
- The names of the LIFs are *node1_clus1* and *node1_clus2* on node 1, and *node2_clus1* and *node2_clus2* on node 2 respectively.

* The `cluster1::*>` prompt indicates the name of the cluster.
* The cluster ports used in this procedure are *e3a* and *e3b*.
* Breakout ports take the format: swp[port]s[breakout port 0-3]. For example, four breakout ports on swp1 are *swp1s0*, *swp1s1*, *swp1s2*, and *swp1s3*.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message: `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh`

   where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering `y` when prompted to continue: `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt (`*>`) appears.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

Cumulus Linux 4.4.x

1. Disable all node-facing ports (not ISL ports) on both the new cluster switches sw1 and sw2.

   You must not disable the ISL ports.

   The following commands disable the node-facing ports on switches sw1 and sw2:

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net add interface swp1s0-3, swp2s0-3, swp3-14 link
   down
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net pending
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net commit

   cumulus@sw2:~$ net add interface swp1s0-3, swp2s0-3, swp3-14 link
   down
   cumulus@sw2:~$ net pending
   cumulus@sw2:~$ net commit
   ```

2. Verify that the ISL and the physical ports on the ISL between the two SN2100 switches sw1 and sw2 are up on ports swp15 and swp16:

   `net show interface`

   The following commands show that the ISL ports are up on switches sw1 and sw2:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show interface

State  Name       Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP          Summary
-----  ---------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------
-----------------------
...
...
UP     swp15      100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp15)  Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16      100G  9216   BondMember  sw2 (swp16)  Master:
cluster_isl(UP)

cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name       Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP          Summary
-----  ---------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------
-----------------------
...
...
UP     swp15      100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp15)  Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16      100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp16)  Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

1. Disable all node-facing ports (not ISL ports) on both new cluster switches sw1 and sw2.

   You must not disable the ISL ports.

   The following commands disable the node-facing ports on switches sw1 and sw2:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv set interface swp1s0-3,swp2s0-3,swp3-14 link state
down
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv config apply
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv save

cumulus@sw2:~$ nv set interface swp1s0-3,swp2s0-3,swp3-14 link state
down
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv config apply
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv save
```

2. Verify that the ISL and the physical ports on the ISL between the two SN2100 switches sw1 and sw2 are up on ports swp15 and swp16:

   `nv show interface`

The following examples show that the ISL ports are up on switches sw1 and sw2:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv show interface

Interface     MTU    Speed  State  Remote Host  Remote Port
Type    Summary
------------- ------ -----  ------ ------------
------------------------------------ ------- -------
...
...
+ swp14       9216          down
swp
+ swp15       9216   100G   up     ossg-rcf1    Intra-Cluster Switch
ISL Port swp15  swp
+ swp16       9216   100G   up     ossg-rcf2    Intra-Cluster Switch
ISL Port swp16  swp


cumulus@sw2:~$ nv show interface

Interface     MTU    Speed  State  Remote Host  Remote Port
Type    Summary
------------- ------ -----  ------ ------------
------------------------------------ ------- -------
...
...
+ swp14       9216          down
swp
+ swp15       9216   100G   up     ossg-rcf1    Intra-Cluster Switch
ISL Port swp15  swp
+ swp16       9216   100G   up     ossg-rcf2    Intra-Cluster Switch
ISL Port swp16  swp
```

3. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

`network port show`

Each port should display `up` for `Link` and healthy for `Health Status`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show

Node: node1


Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2


Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

4. Verify that all cluster LIFs are up and operational:

   `network interface show`

   Each cluster LIF should display true for `Is Home` and have a `Status Admin/Oper` of `up/up`.

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

             Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver      Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node
Port    Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- -----
Cluster
             node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1
e3a     true
             node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1
e3b     true
             node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2
e3a     true
             node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2
e3b     true
```

5. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

`network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert false

           Logical
Vserver    Interface      Auto-revert
--------- ------------- ------------
Cluster
           node1_clus1    false
           node1_clus2    false
           node2_clus1    false
           node2_clus2    false
```

6. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e3a on node1, and then connect e3a to port 3 on cluster switch sw1, using the appropriate cabling supported by the SN2100 switches.

   The Hardware Universe - Switches contains more information about cabling.

7. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e3a on node2, and then connect e3a to port 4 on cluster switch sw1,

using the appropriate cabling supported by the SN2100 switches.

Cumulus Linux 4.4.x

8. On switch sw1, enable all node-facing ports.

   The following commands enable all node-facing ports on switch sw1.

   ```
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net del interface swp1s0-3, swp2s0-3, swp3-14 link
   down
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net pending
   cumulus@sw1:~$ net commit
   ```

9. On switch sw1, verify that all ports are up:

   `net show interface all`

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show interface all

State  Name      Spd   MTU    Mode       LLDP              Summary
-----  --------- ----  -----  ---------- ----------------  --------
...
DN     swp1s0    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s1    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s2    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s3    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s0    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s1    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s2    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s3    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                     Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp3      100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node1 (e3a)      Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp4      100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node2 (e3a)      Master:
br_default(UP)
...
...
UP     swp15     100G  9216   BondMember  swp15            Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16     100G  9216   BondMember  swp16            Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
...
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

8. On switch sw1, enable all node-facing ports.

   The following commands enable all node-facing ports on switch sw1.

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv unset interface swp1s0-3,swp2s0-3,swp3-14 link
state down
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv config apply
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv config save
```

9. On switch sw1, verify that all ports are up:

```
nv show interface
```

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv show interface

Interface     State  Speed  MTU    Type      Remote Host
Remote Port  Summary
-----------  -----  -----  -----  --------
------------------------  -----------  ----------
...
...
swp1s0       up     10G    9216   swp       odq-a300-1a
e0a
swp1s1       up     10G    9216   swp       odq-a300-1b
e0a
swp1s2       down   10G    9216   swp
swp1s3       down   10G    9216   swp
swp2s0       down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s1       down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s2       down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s3       down   25G    9216   swp
swp3         down          9216   swp
swp4         down          9216   swp
...
...
swp14        down          9216   swp
swp15        up     100G   9216   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp15
swp16        up     100G   9216   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp16
```

10. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

The following example shows that all of the cluster ports are up on node1 and node2:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

11. Display information about the status of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster show
```

Show example

The following example displays information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
-------------------- ------- ------------  ------------
node1                true    true          false
node2                true    true          false
```

12. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e3b on node1, and then connect e3b to port 3 on cluster switch sw2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the SN2100 switches.
13. Disconnect the cable from cluster port e3b on node2, and then connect e3b to port 4 on cluster switch sw2, using the appropriate cabling supported by the SN2100 switches.

Cumulus Linux 4.4.x

14. On switch sw2, enable all node-facing ports.

    The following commands enable the node-facing ports on switch sw2:

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ net del interface swp1s0-3, swp2s0-3, swp3-14 link
down
cumulus@sw2:~$ net pending
cumulus@sw2:~$ net commit
```

15. On switch sw2, verify that all ports are up:

```
net show interface all
```

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ net show interface all

State  Name      Spd   MTU    Mode       LLDP            Summary
-----  --------- ----  -----  ---------- --------------- --------
...
DN     swp1s0    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s1    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s2    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp1s3    10G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s0    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s1    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s2    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
DN     swp2s3    25G   9216   Trunk/L2                   Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp3      100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node1 (e3b)    Master:
br_default(UP)
UP     swp4      100G  9216   Trunk/L2    node2 (e3b)    Master:
br_default(UP)
...
...
UP     swp15     100G  9216   BondMember  swp15          Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16     100G  9216   BondMember  swp16          Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
...
```

16. On both switches sw1 and sw2, verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

```
net show lldp
```

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches sw1 and sw2:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1              e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2              e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw2                swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw2                swp16

cumulus@sw2:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1              e3b
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2              e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp16
```

Cumulus Linux 5.x

14. On switch sw2, enable all node-facing ports.

    The following commands enable the node-facing ports on switch sw2:

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv unset interface swp1s0-3,swp2s0-3,swp3-14 link
state down
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv config apply
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv config save
```

15. On switch sw2, verify that all ports are up:

```
nv show interface
```

```
cumulus@sw2:~$ nv show interface

Interface     State  Speed  MTU    Type      Remote Host
Remote Port   Summary
-----------   -----  -----  -----  --------
--------------------------  -----------  ----------
...
...
swp1s0        up     10G    9216   swp       odq-a300-1a
e0a
swp1s1        up     10G    9216   swp       odq-a300-1b
e0a
swp1s2        down   10G    9216   swp
swp1s3        down   10G    9216   swp
swp2s0        down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s1        down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s2        down   25G    9216   swp
swp2s3        down   25G    9216   swp
swp3          down          9216   swp
swp4          down          9216   swp
...
...
swp14         down          9216   swp
swp15         up     100G   9216   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp15
swp16         up     100G   9216   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp16
```

16. On both switches sw1 and sw2, verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

```
nv show interface --view=lldp
```

The following examples show the appropriate results for both switches sw1 and sw2:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ nv show interface --view=lldp

Interface     Speed  Type      Remote Host
Remote Port
-----------   -----  --------  ----------------------------------
-----------
...
...
swp1s0        10G    swp       odq-a300-1a
e0a
swp1s1        10G    swp       odq-a300-1b
```

```
e0a
swp1s2        10G    swp
swp1s3        10G    swp
swp2s0        25G    swp
swp2s1        25G    swp
swp2s2        25G    swp
swp2s3        25G    swp
swp3                 swp
swp4                 swp
...
...
swp14                swp
swp15         100G   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp15
swp16         100G   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp16

cumulus@sw2:~$ nv show interface --view=lldp

Interface     Speed  Type      Remote Host
Remote Port
-----------   -----  --------  ----------------------------------
-----------
...
...
swp1s0        10G    swp       odq-a300-1a
e0a
swp1s1        10G    swp       odq-a300-1b
e0a
swp1s2        10G    swp
swp1s3        10G    swp
swp2s0        25G    swp
swp2s1        25G    swp
swp2s2        25G    swp
swp2s3        25G    swp
swp3                 swp
swp4                 swp
...
...
swp14                swp
swp15         100G   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp15
swp16         100G   swp       ossg-int-rcf10
swp16
```

17. Display information about the discovered network devices in your cluster:

```
network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface     Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ------------
----------------
node1       /lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3          -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3          -
node2       /lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4          -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4          -
```

18. Verify that all cluster ports are up:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

The following example shows that all of the cluster ports are up on node1 and node2:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper  Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

Step 3: Complete the procedure

1. Enable auto-revert on all cluster LIFs:

```
net interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> net interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert true

          Logical
Vserver   Interface     Auto-revert
--------- ------------- ------------
Cluster
          node1_clus1   true
          node1_clus2   true
          node2_clus1   true
          node2_clus2   true
```

2. Verify that all interfaces display `true` for `Is Home`:

`net interface show -vserver Cluster`

> This might take a minute to complete.

Show example

The following example shows that all LIFs are up on node1 and node2 and that `Is Home` results are true:

```
cluster1::*> net interface show -vserver Cluster

          Logical      Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver   Interface    Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node         Port
Home
--------- ------------ ---------- ------------------ ----------
------- ----
Cluster
          node1_clus1  up/up      169.254.209.69/16  node1        e3a
true
          node1_clus2  up/up      169.254.49.125/16  node1        e3b
true
          node2_clus1  up/up      169.254.47.194/16  node2        e3a
true
          node2_clus2  up/up      169.254.19.183/16  node2        e3b
true
```

3. Verify that the settings are disabled:

   `network options switchless-cluster show`

   Show example

   The false output in the following example shows that the configuration settings are disabled:

   ```
   cluster1::*> network options switchless-cluster show
   Enable Switchless Cluster: false
   ```

4. Verify the status of the node members in the cluster:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example shows information about the health and eligibility of the nodes in the cluster:

   ```
   cluster1::*> cluster show

   Node                 Health  Eligibility   Epsilon
   -------------------- ------- ------------  --------
   node1                true    true          false
   node2                true    true          false
   ```

5. Verify that the cluster network has full connectivity:

   `cluster ping-cluster -node node-name`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> cluster ping-cluster -node node1
Host is node1
Getting addresses from network interface table...
Cluster node1_clus1 169.254.209.69 node1 e3a
Cluster node1_clus2 169.254.49.125 node1 e3b
Cluster node2_clus1 169.254.47.194 node2 e3a
Cluster node2_clus2 169.254.19.183 node2 e3b
Local = 169.254.47.194 169.254.19.183
Remote = 169.254.209.69 169.254.49.125
Cluster Vserver Id = 4294967293
Ping status:

Basic connectivity succeeds on 4 path(s)
Basic connectivity fails on 0 path(s)

Detected 9000 byte MTU on 4 path(s):
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.47.194 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.209.69
Local 169.254.19.183 to Remote 169.254.49.125
Larger than PMTU communication succeeds on 4 path(s)
RPC status:
2 paths up, 0 paths down (tcp check)
2 paths up, 0 paths down (udp check)
```

6. To set up log collection, run the following command for each switch. You are prompted to enter the switch name, username, and password for log collection.

```
system switch ethernet log setup-password
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

7. To start log collection, run the following command, replacing DEVICE with the switch used in the previous command. This starts both types of log collection: the detailed **Support** logs and an hourly collection of **Periodic** data.

   `system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device sw1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device sw2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

`system switch ethernet log show`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log show
Log Collection Enabled: true

Index  Switch                        Log Timestamp        Status
------ ----------------------------- -------------------- ---------
1      sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)       4/29/2022 03:05:25   complete
2      sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)       4/29/2022 03:07:42   complete
```

> If any of these commands return an error, contact NetApp support.

8. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   `set -privilege admin`

9. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

Replace switches

Replace a NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switch

Follow this procedure to replace a defective NVIDIA SN2100 switch in a cluster network. This is a nondisruptive procedure (NDU).

Review requirements

Existing cluster and network infrastructure

Ensure that:

- The existing cluster are verified as completely functional, with at least one fully connected cluster switch.
- All cluster ports are up.
- All cluster logical interfaces (LIFs) are up and on their home ports.
- The ONTAP `cluster ping-cluster -node node1` command indicates that basic connectivity and larger than PMTU communication are successful on all paths.

NVIDIA SN2100 replacement switch

Ensure that:

- Management network connectivity on the replacement switch are functional.
- Console access to the replacement switch are in place.
- The node connections are ports swp1 through swp14.
- All Inter-Switch Link (ISL) ports are disabled on ports swp15 and swp16.
- The desired reference configuration file (RCF) and Cumulus operating system image switch are loaded onto the switch.
- Initial customization of the switch is complete.

Also make sure that any previous site customizations, such as STP, SNMP, and SSH, are copied to the new switch.

> ⓘ You must execute the command for migrating a cluster LIF from the node where the cluster LIF is hosted.

Replace the switch

About the examples

The examples in this procedure use the following switch and node nomenclature:

- The names of the existing NVIDIA SN2100 switches are *sw1* and *sw2*.
- The name of the new NVIDIA SN2100 switch is *nsw2*.
- The node names are *node1* and *node2*.
- The cluster ports on each node are named *e3a* and *e3b*.
- The cluster LIF names are *node1_clus1* and *node1_clus2* for node1, and *node2_clus1* and *node2_clus2* for node2.
- The prompt for changes to all cluster nodes is `cluster1::*>`

* Breakout ports take the format: swp[port]s[breakout port 0-3]. For example, four breakout ports on swp1 are *swp1s0*, *swp1s1*, *swp1s2*, and *swp1s3*.

About the cluster network topology

This procedure is based on the following cluster network topology:

Show example topology

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------ --------
------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000 healthy
false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000 healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)  Health
Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU  Admin/Oper   Status
Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ---- ------------ --------
------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000 healthy
false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000 healthy
false


cluster1::*> network interface show -vserver Cluster

            Logical    Status     Network            Current
Current Is
Vserver     Interface  Admin/Oper Address/Mask       Node             Port
Home
----------- ---------- ---------- ------------------ -------------
------- ----
Cluster
            node1_clus1  up/up    169.254.209.69/16  node1         e3a
true
            node1_clus2  up/up    169.254.49.125/16  node1         e3b
true
```

```
             node2_clus1  up/up    169.254.47.194/16  node2         e3a
true
             node2_clus2  up/up    169.254.19.183/16  node2         e3b
true


cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface     Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ------------
----------------
node1       /lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3          -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp3          -
node2       /lldp
             e3a    sw1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4          -
             e3b    sw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)   swp4          -
```

+

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    sw2                e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    sw2                e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw2                swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw2                swp16


cumulus@sw2:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    sw1                e3b
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    sw1                e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp16
```

Step 1: Prepare for replacement

1. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=xh` where *x* is the duration of the maintenance window in hours.

2. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering **y** when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt (*>) appears.

3. Install the appropriate RCF and image on the switch, nsw2, and make any necessary site preparations.

   If necessary, verify, download, and install the appropriate versions of the RCF and Cumulus software for the new switch.

   a. You can download the applicable Cumulus software for your cluster switches from the *NVIDIA Support* site. Follow the steps on the Download page to download the Cumulus Linux for the version of ONTAP software you are installing.
   b. The appropriate RCF is available from the *NVIDIA Cluster and Storage Switches* page. Follow the steps on the Download page to download the correct RCF for the version of ONTAP software you are installing.

Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. On the new switch nsw2, log in as admin and shut down all of the ports that will be connected to the node cluster interfaces (ports swp1 to swp14).

   The LIFs on the cluster nodes should have already failed over to the other cluster port for each node.

   Show example

```
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net add interface swp1s0-3, swp2s0-3, swp3-14 link
down
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net pending
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net commit
```

2. Disable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

   Show example

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto
-revert false

Warning: Disabling the auto-revert feature of the cluster logical
interface may effect the availability of your cluster network. Are
you sure you want to continue? {y|n}: y
```

3. Verify that all cluster LIFs have auto-revert enabled:

```
net interface show -vserver Cluster -fields auto-revert
```

4. Shut down the ISL ports swp15 and swp16 on the SN2100 switch sw1.

Show example

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net add interface swp15-16 link down
cumulus@sw1:~$ net pending
cumulus@sw1:~$ net commit
```

5. Remove all the cables from the SN2100 sw1 switch, and then connect them to the same ports on the SN2100 nsw2 switch.
6. Bring up the ISL ports swp15 and swp16 between the sw1 and nsw2 switches.

Show example

The following commands enable ISL ports swp15 and swp16 on switch sw1:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net del interface swp15-16 link down
cumulus@sw1:~$ net pending
cumulus@sw1:~$ net commit
```

The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch sw1:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show interface

State  Name         Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP            Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  --------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp15        100G  9216   BondMember  nsw2 (swp15)    Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16        100G  9216   BondMember  nsw2 (swp16)    Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
```

+
The following example shows that the ISL ports are up on switch nsw2:

+

```
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name         Spd   MTU    Mode        LLDP            Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -------------
-----------------------
...
...
UP     swp15        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp15)     Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1 (swp16)     Master:
cluster_isl(UP)
```

7. Verify that port `e3b` is up on all nodes:

```
network port show -ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

The output should be similar to the following:

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- ------------
-------- -------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false


Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps)
Health    Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link MTU   Admin/Oper
Status    Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ---- ----- -----------
--------- -------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up   9000  auto/100000
healthy  false
```

8. The cluster ports on each node are now connected to cluster switches in the following way, from the nodes' perspective:

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network device-discovery show -protocol lldp
Node/        Local  Discovered
Protocol     Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface     Platform
----------- ------ ------------------------- ------------
----------------
node1      /lldp
            e3a    sw1  (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp3          -
            e3b    nsw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:b6)   swp3          -
node2      /lldp
            e3a    sw1  (b8:ce:f6:19:1a:7e)   swp4          -
            e3b    nsw2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:b6)   swp4          -
```

9. Verify that all node cluster ports are up:

`net show interface`

Show example

```
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net show interface

State  Name         Spd   MTU    Mode         LLDP
Summary
-----  -----------  ----  -----  ----------  -----------------
----------------------
...
...
UP     swp3         100G  9216   Trunk/L2
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp4         100G  9216   Trunk/L2
Master: bridge(UP)
UP     swp15        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1  (swp15)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
UP     swp16        100G  9216   BondMember  sw1  (swp16)
Master: cluster_isl(UP)
```

10. Verify that both nodes each have one connection to each switch:

`net show lldp`

Show example

The following example shows the appropriate results for both switches:

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1              e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2              e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  nsw2               swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  nsw2               swp16


cumulus@nsw2:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost         RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  -----------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1                e3b
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2                e3b
swp15      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  sw1                swp16
```

11. Enable auto-revert on the cluster LIFs:

```
cluster1::*> network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert
true
```

12. On switch nsw2, bring up the ports connected to the network ports of the nodes.

Show example

```
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net del interface swp1-14 link down
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net pending
cumulus@nsw2:~$ net commit
```

13. Display information about the nodes in a cluster:

```
cluster show
```

Show example

This example shows that the node health for node1 and node2 in this cluster is true:

```
cluster1::*> cluster show

Node           Health  Eligibility
-------------- ------- ------------
node1          true    true
node2          true    true
```

14. Verify that all physical cluster ports are up:

```
network port show ipspace Cluster
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> network port show -ipspace Cluster

Node node1
Ignore
                                                    Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace     Broadcast Domain  Link  MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ----------- ----------------- ----- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster     Cluster           up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster     Cluster           up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                    Speed(Mbps)
Health   Health
Port      IPspace      Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper
Status   Status
--------- ------------ ---------------- ----- ----- -----------
-------- ------
e3a       Cluster      Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
e3b       Cluster      Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000
healthy  false
```

Step 3: Complete the procedure

1. Verify that the cluster network is healthy.

Show example

```
cumulus@sw1:~$ net show lldp

LocalPort  Speed  Mode        RemoteHost      RemotePort
---------  -----  ----------  --------------  -----------
swp3       100G   Trunk/L2    node1           e3a
swp4       100G   Trunk/L2    node2           e3a
swp15      100G   BondMember  nsw2            swp15
swp16      100G   BondMember  nsw2            swp16
```

2. Create a password for the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature:

`system switch ethernet log setup-password`

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password
Enter the switch name: <return>
The switch name entered is not recognized.
Choose from the following list:
cs1
cs2

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs1
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log setup-password

Enter the switch name: cs2
Would you like to specify a user other than admin for log
collection? {y|n}: n

Enter the password: <enter switch password>
Enter the password again: <enter switch password>
```

3. Enable the Ethernet switch health monitor log collection feature.

```
system switch ethernet log modify -device <switch-name> -log-request true
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs1 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.

cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log modify -device cs2 -log
-request true

Do you want to modify the cluster switch log collection
configuration? {y|n}: [n] y

Enabling cluster switch log collection.
```

Wait for 10 minutes and then check that the log collection completes:

```
system switch ethernet log show
```

Show example

```
cluster1::*> system switch ethernet log show
Log Collection Enabled: true

Index  Switch                       Log Timestamp        Status
------ ---------------------------- -------------------  ---------


1      cs1 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:42)      4/29/2022 03:05:25   complete
2      cs2 (b8:ce:f6:19:1b:96)      4/29/2022 03:07:42   complete
```

> If any of these commands return an error or if the log collection does not complete, contact NetApp support.

4. Change the privilege level back to admin:

   ```
   set -privilege admin
   ```

5. If you suppressed automatic case creation, re-enable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

```
system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END
```

Replace NVIDIA SN2100 cluster switches with switchless connections

You can migrate from a cluster with a switched cluster network to one where two nodes are directly connected for ONTAP 9.3 and later.

Review requirements

Guidelines

Review the following guidelines:

- Migrating to a two-node switchless cluster configuration is a nondisruptive operation. Most systems have two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, but you can also use this procedure for systems with a larger number of dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node, such as four, six or eight.
- You cannot use the switchless cluster interconnect feature with more than two nodes.
- If you have an existing two-node cluster that uses cluster interconnect switches and is running ONTAP 9.3 or later, you can replace the switches with direct, back-to-back connections between the nodes.

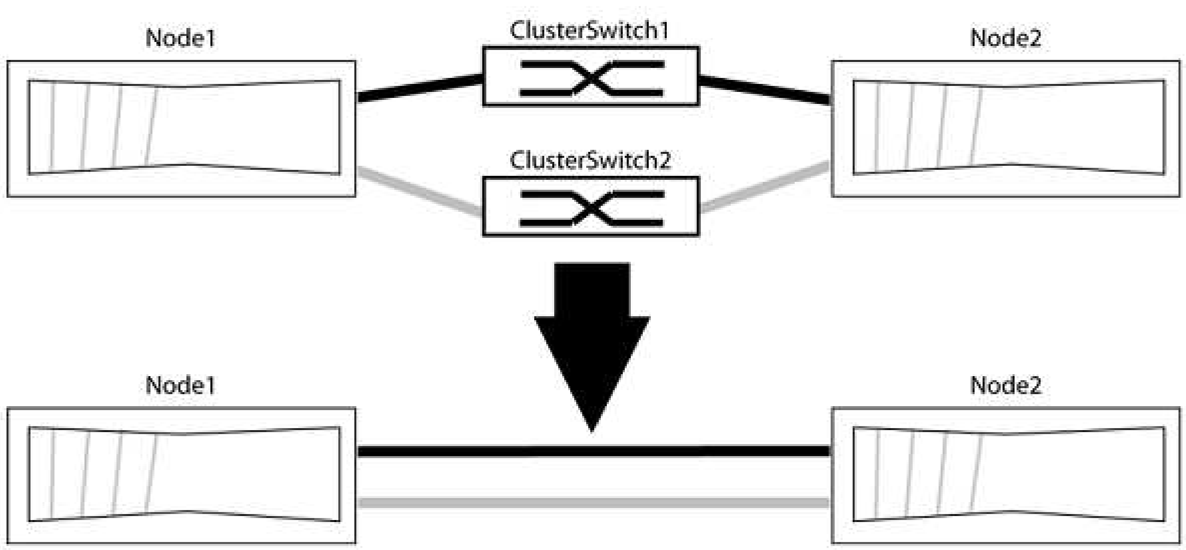
What you'll need

- A healthy cluster that consists of two nodes connected by cluster switches. The nodes must be running the same ONTAP release.
- Each node with the required number of dedicated cluster ports, which provide redundant cluster interconnect connections to support your system configuration. For example, there are two redundant ports for a system with two dedicated cluster interconnect ports on each node.

Migrate the switches

About this task

The following procedure removes the cluster switches in a two-node cluster and replaces each connection to the switch with a direct connection to the partner node.



About the examples

The examples in the following procedure show nodes that are using "e0a" and "e0b" as cluster ports. Your nodes might be using different cluster ports as they vary by system.

Step 1: Prepare for migration

1. Change the privilege level to advanced, entering `y` when prompted to continue:

   `set -privilege advanced`

   The advanced prompt `*>` appears.

2. ONTAP 9.3 and later supports automatic detection of switchless clusters, which is enabled by default.

   You can verify that detection of switchless clusters is enabled by running the advanced privilege command:

   `network options detect-switchless-cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example output shows if the option is enabled.

   ```
   cluster::*> network options detect-switchless-cluster show
      (network options detect-switchless-cluster show)
   Enable Switchless Cluster Detection: true
   ```

   If "Enable Switchless Cluster Detection" is `false`, contact NetApp support.

3. If AutoSupport is enabled on this cluster, suppress automatic case creation by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=<number_of_hours>h`

   where `h` is the duration of the maintenance window in hours. The message notifies technical support of this maintenance task so that they can suppress automatic case creation during the maintenance window.

   In the following example, the command suppresses automatic case creation for two hours:

   Show example

   ```
   cluster::*> system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all
   -message MAINT=2h
   ```

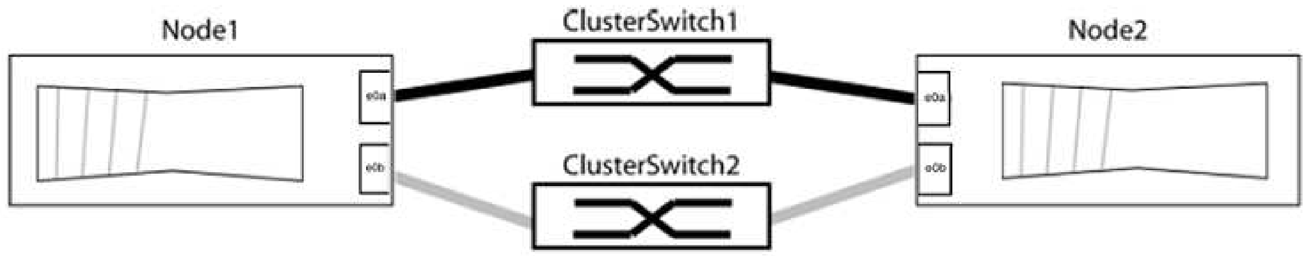
Step 2: Configure ports and cabling

1. Organize the cluster ports on each switch into groups so that the cluster ports in group1 go to cluster switch1 and the cluster ports in group2 go to cluster switch2. These groups are required later in the procedure.

2. Identify the cluster ports and verify link status and health:

   ```
   network port show -ipspace Cluster
   ```

   In the following example for nodes with cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b", one group is identified as "node1:e0a" and "node2:e0a" and the other group as "node1:e0b" and "node2:e0b". Your nodes might be using different cluster ports because they vary by system.

   Verify that the ports have a value of `up` for the "Link" column and a value of `healthy` for the "Health Status" column.

Show example

```
cluster::> network port show -ipspace Cluster
Node: node1

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false

Node: node2

Ignore
                                                  Speed(Mbps) Health
Health
Port   IPspace   Broadcast Domain Link  MTU   Admin/Oper  Status
Status
----- --------- ---------------- ----- ----- ----------- -------
-------
e0a   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
e0b   Cluster   Cluster          up    9000  auto/10000  healthy
false
4 entries were displayed.
```

3. Confirm that all the cluster LIFs are on their home ports.

   Verify that the “is-home” column is `true` for each of the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home`

Show example

```
cluster::*> net int show -vserver Cluster -fields is-home
(network interface show)
vserver  lif          is-home
-------- ------------ --------
Cluster  node1_clus1  true
Cluster  node1_clus2  true
Cluster  node2_clus1  true
Cluster  node2_clus2  true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If there are cluster LIFs that are not on their home ports, revert those LIFs to their home ports:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *`

4. Disable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert false`

5. Verify that all ports listed in the previous step are connected to a network switch:

   `network device-discovery show -port` *`cluster_port`*

   The “Discovered Device” column should be the name of the cluster switch that the port is connected to.

   Show example

   The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to cluster switches "cs1" and "cs2".

```
cluster::> network device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/     Local  Discovered
Protocol  Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
--------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
          e0a    cs1                       0/11       BES-53248
          e0b    cs2                       0/12       BES-53248
node2/cdp
          e0a    cs1                       0/9        BES-53248
          e0b    cs2                       0/9        BES-53248
4 entries were displayed.
```

6. Verify the cluster connectivity:

```
cluster ping-cluster -node local
```

7. Verify that the cluster is healthy:

```
cluster ring show
```

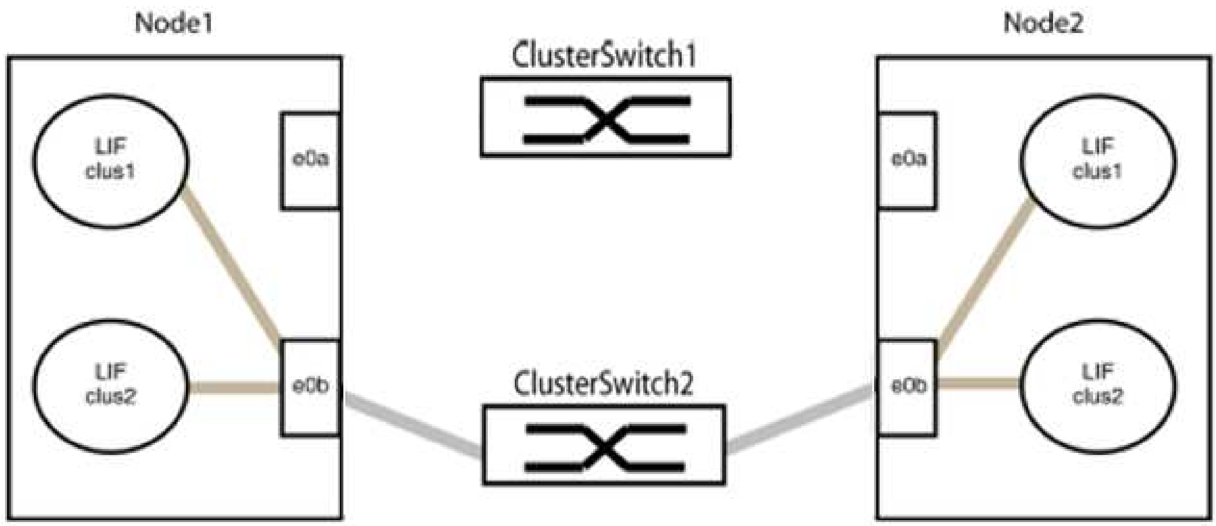
   All units must be either master or secondary.

8. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 1.

> To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group1 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

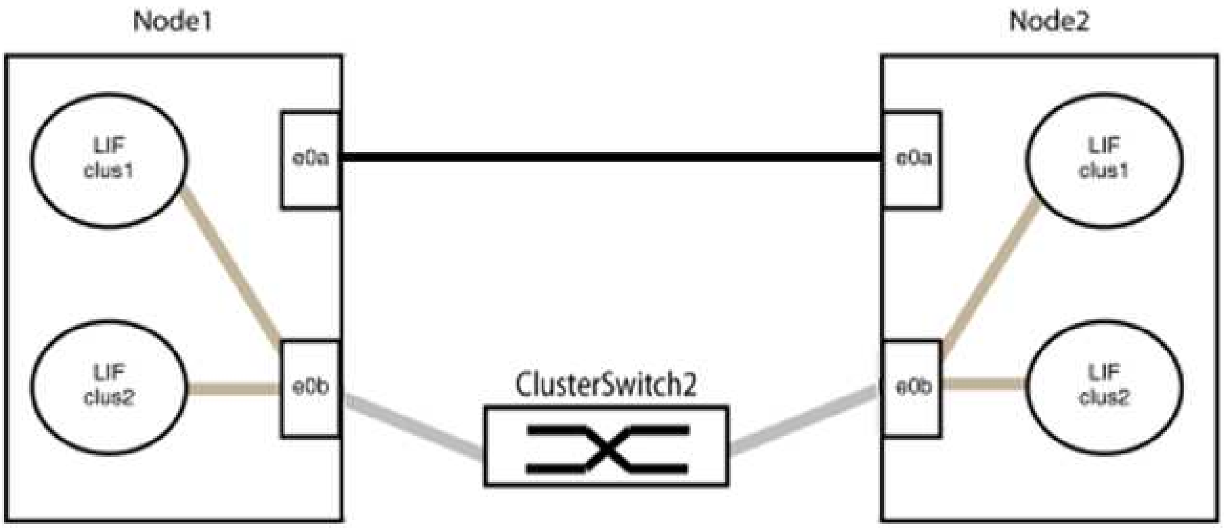
   a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group1 at the same time.

      In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0a" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the switch and port "e0b" on each node:



   b. Cable the ports in group1 back-to-back.

      In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2:



9. The switchless cluster network option transitions from `false` to `true`. This might take up to 45 seconds. Confirm that the switchless option is set to `true`:

   `network options switchless-cluster show`

   The following example shows that the switchless cluster is enabled:

   ```
   cluster::*> network options switchless-cluster show
   Enable Switchless Cluster: true
   ```

10. Verify that the cluster network is not disrupted:

    `cluster ping-cluster -node local`

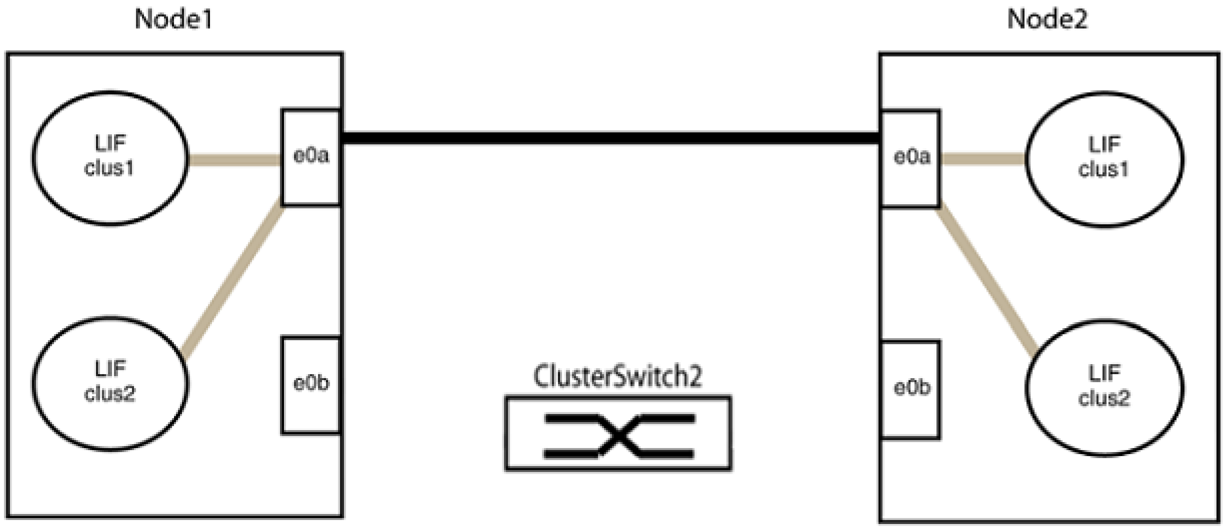
    > Before proceeding to the next step, you must wait at least two minutes to confirm a working back-to-back connection on group 1.

11. Set up the switchless configuration for the ports in group 2.

    > To avoid potential networking issues, you must disconnect the ports from group2 and reconnect them back-to-back as quickly as possible, for example, **in less than 20 seconds**.

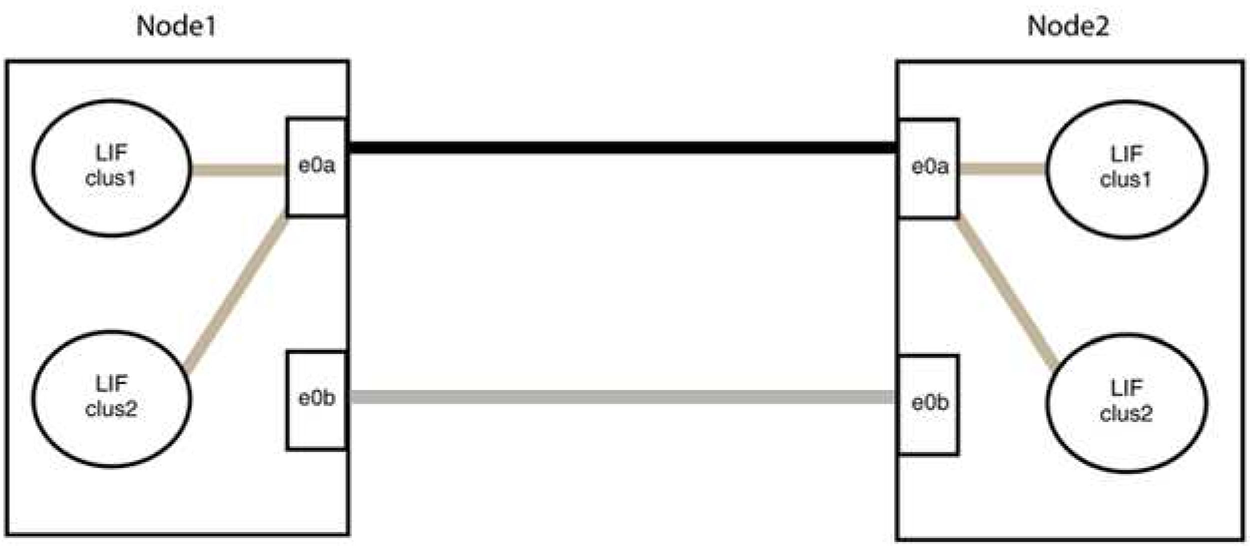
    a. Disconnect all the cables from the ports in group2 at the same time.

       In the following example, the cables are disconnected from port "e0b" on each node, and cluster traffic continues through the direct connection between the "e0a" ports:



b. Cable the ports in group2 back-to-back.

   In the following example, "e0a" on node1 is connected to "e0a" on node2 and "e0b" on node1 is connected to "e0b" on node2:



Step 3: Verify the configuration

1. Verify that the ports on both nodes are correctly connected:

   `network device-discovery show -port` *`cluster_port`*

Show example

The following example shows that cluster ports "e0a" and "e0b" are correctly connected to the corresponding port on the cluster partner:

```
cluster::> net device-discovery show -port e0a|e0b
  (network device-discovery show)
Node/      Local  Discovered
Protocol   Port   Device (LLDP: ChassisID)  Interface  Platform
---------- ------ ------------------------- ---------- ----------
node1/cdp
           e0a    node2                     e0a        AFF-A300
           e0b    node2                     e0b        AFF-A300
node1/lldp
           e0a    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0a        -
           e0b    node2 (00:a0:98:da:16:44) e0b        -
node2/cdp
           e0a    node1                     e0a        AFF-A300
           e0b    node1                     e0b        AFF-A300
node2/lldp
           e0a    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0a        -
           e0b    node1 (00:a0:98:da:87:49) e0b        -
8 entries were displayed.
```

2. Re-enable auto-revert for the cluster LIFs:

   `network interface modify -vserver Cluster -lif * -auto-revert true`

3. Verify that all LIFs are home. This might take a few seconds.

   `network interface show -vserver Cluster -lif lif_name`

Show example

The LIFs have been reverted if the “Is Home” column is `true`, as shown for `node1_clus2` and `node2_clus2` in the following example:

```
cluster::> network interface show -vserver Cluster -fields curr-
port,is-home
vserver  lif           curr-port is-home
-------- ------------- --------- -------
Cluster  node1_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node1_clus2   e0b       true
Cluster  node2_clus1   e0a       true
Cluster  node2_clus2   e0b       true
4 entries were displayed.
```

If any cluster LIFS have not returned to their home ports, revert them manually from the local node:

`network interface revert -vserver Cluster -lif *lif_name*`

4. Check the cluster status of the nodes from the system console of either node:

   `cluster show`

   Show example

   The following example shows epsilon on both nodes to be `false`:

   ```
   Node  Health  Eligibility Epsilon
   ----- ------- ----------- --------
   node1 true    true        false
   node2 true    true        false
   2 entries were displayed.
   ```

5. Confirm connectivity between the cluster ports:

   `cluster ping-cluster local`

6. If you suppressed automatic case creation, reenable it by invoking an AutoSupport message:

   `system node autosupport invoke -node * -type all -message MAINT=END`

   For more information, see NetApp KB Article 1010449: How to suppress automatic case creation during scheduled maintenance windows.

7. Change the privilege level back to admin:

```
set -privilege admin
```